

P R E F A C E

In 1974 in the midst of a growing U. S. interest in the Arabian Peninsula the Foreign Service Institute undertook to fill a significant gap in language learning materials: there was no convenient manual for speakers of English who wished to learn the Hijazi dialect of Saudi Arabia. Spoken natively by about two million people and understood and used by at least three million more, it is the most widely understood dialect on the Arabian Peninsula.

The *Saudi Arabic Basic Course (Urban Hijazi Dialect)* is principally the work of Dr. Margaret K. Omar of the FSI linguist staff. In two trips to Saudi Arabia she collected language material and conducted the linguistic research on which the Arabic passages and the grammatical statements in this volume are based. Dr. Omar has elsewhere expressed appreciation to four Jidda residents who were particularly helpful as sources of the Hijazi dialect material appearing in this text. One of them, Mrs. Ayesha Al-Marzouki, worked with Dr. Omar in Jidda at an early stage of the project and later reviewed the Arabic portions page by page with Dr. Omar in the United States.

Dr. Omar planned the book, selected the Hijazi materials, fitted them together in their present form, provided the English language glosses, and wrote the explanatory passages. Consultation with a number of specialists in the field assured the accuracy of the work. Dr. Mahmoud Sieny of the University of Riyadh provided counsel on the design and content of the manuscript in its early stages and reviewed it again when it was in near final form. The manuscript also had the benefit of study and comment by Dr. Peter Abboud of the University of Texas, Dr. Ernest Abdel-Massih of the University of Michigan and Dr. Hamdi Qafisheh of the University of Arizona.

Dr. Harlie L. Smith of the FSI linguist staff made helpful suggestions as to form and Mr. Naim Owais, FSI Arabic language instructor, edited the Arabic language content. Mr. Augustus A. Koski edited the English language content and provided support and assistance to Dr. Omar from the earliest stages of planning through the submission of the manuscript for publication.

Typing of the camera copy was done by Mrs. Maryko Deemer, with assistance from Miss Denise Coleman. Cover and title page were prepared by the FSI Audio-Visual Staff, under the direction of Joseph A. Sadote.

The Foreign Service Institute is indebted to the U. S. Office of Education for financial support which has made it possible to prepare and publish this volume.


James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

PRONUNCIATION

The Transcription System

The following is a list of the symbols used in the transcription of the sounds of Saudi Arabic and their approximate equivalents in English. It was decided to write this textbook using a transcription system rather than the Arabic alphabet because the alphabet cannot accurately represent the pronunciation of all words in the dialect (some consonant and vowel distinctions would be missing) and the instructor or student may be tempted to pronounce the word in the classical way if it is spelled the same. The Arabic alphabet has been added, however, as a supplement to the dialogues, drills, and some vocabulary lists, and is intended for use by the native-speaking instructor. The spelling of some words has been changed to reflect colloquial speech.

It should be borne in mind that Arabic and English sounds rarely correspond exactly, and the correct Arabic pronunciation is to be learned from the instructor.

<u>Arabic Letter</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Approximate English Equivalent</u>
ء	'	the catch in the throat between the vowels of <u>oh-oh</u>
ا	a, aa	ranges from <u>a</u> in <u>cat</u> to <u>a</u> in <u>father</u> ; may be long or short
ب	b	<u>b</u> in <u>bet</u>
د	d	<u>d</u> in <u>dead</u>
ذ	ḏ	not in English; <u>d</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
هـ	ee	<u>ai</u> in <u>bait</u> ; usually occurs as a long vowel
ف	f	<u>f</u> in <u>fee</u>
ق	g	<u>g</u> in <u>get</u>
غ	gh	not in English; somewhat like a Parisian <u>r</u> but harsher
هـ	h	<u>h</u> in <u>head</u>
ح	H	not in English; similar to <u>h</u> , but strongly whispered from deep in the throat
ي	i, ii	if short, <u>i</u> in <u>bit</u> , except at the end of words; at the end of a word or when long, <u>ee</u> in <u>meet</u>
ج	j	<u>j</u> in <u>jet</u>
ك	k	<u>k</u> in <u>king</u>
ل	l	<u>l</u> in <u>let</u>
ل	l	<u>l</u> in <u>ball</u>
م	m	<u>m</u> in <u>man</u>
ن	n	<u>n</u> in <u>net</u>
	oo	<u>oa</u> in <u>coat</u> ; usually occurs as a long vowel
ق	q	not in English; like the <u>c</u> in <u>cool</u> but farther back in the throat

Arabic Letter	Symbol	Approximate English Equivalent
ر	r	not in English; a tongue-tip trill as in Italian or Spanish
س	s	<u>s</u> in <u>sit</u>
ص	\$	not in English; <u>s</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
ش	\$	<u>sh</u> in <u>ship</u>
ت	t	<u>t</u> in <u>tip</u>
ط	t	not in English; <u>t</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
و	u,uu	if short, <u>u</u> in <u>put</u> , except at the end of words; at the end of a word or when long, <u>oo</u> in <u>cool</u>
و	w	<u>w</u> in <u>wet</u>
خ	x	not in English; <u>ch</u> in German <u>acht</u>
ي	y	<u>y</u> in <u>yet</u>
ز	z	<u>z</u> in <u>zero</u>
ظ	z	not in English; <u>z</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
ع	9	not in English; voiced equivalent of H; pronounced by tightening muscles deep in the throat

The symbol // over a vowel indicates that the syllable containing that vowel is stressed.

The Consonants

The consonants drilled here will be those which are different from English. Words used are all real Arabic words, but they will not be translated, since the meanings are not relevant for the drills.

1. /'/ is the sound produced when the breath is stopped in the throat and then released. This sound occurs in English before vowels, such as in the expression oh-oh. It is easy for English-speakers to produce, but in Arabic you must become accustomed to using it in the middle and end of words, as well as in the beginning. Since the sound is automatically at the beginning of a word which starts with a vowel, it will not be marked in the transcription.

insa'an	انسان
awwal	اول
sa'al	سأل
mas'ala	مسألة
la'	لا

2. /H/ is pronounced by tightening the muscles in the middle of the throat so that a harsh H results. It sounds like a whisper and is produced without any voice.

Habb	حب	\$ubuH	صبح	Haal	حال
raaH	راح	\$aHiiH	صحيح	aHwaal	احوال
aHAd	أحد	marHaba	مرحبا	aHmad	أحمد

Contrasts between /h/ and /H/:

hamal	Hamal	هامل	حمن
hal	Haal	هل	حال
minha	minHa	منها	منحه
taah	saaH	تاه	ساح
nahar	naHal	نهر	نحل
ahlan	aHsan	اهلا	احسن

3. /9/ is the voiced counterpart of the /H/. It is pronounced by tightening the muscles deep in the throat, while using the voice, and results in a sort of strangled sound.

*9arabi	عربي	saa9a	ساعة	da9wa	دعوة
9ala	على	ma9aaya	معايه	raaji9	راجع
ma9a	مع	baa9	باع	raaj9a	راجعة

Contrasts between /' / and /9/:

aala	9ala	آلة	على
sa'al	saa9ad	سأل	ساعد
aadaab	9aada	آداب	عاد
iid	9iid	ايد	عبد

Contrasts between /h/ and /9/:

haada	9aada	هادا	عادة
mahmuul	ma9muul	مهمول	معمول
haadi	9aadi	هادي	عادي
šahar	ša9ar	شهر	شعر

Contrasts between /H/ and /9/:

saamiH	saami9	سامح	سامع
balaH	bala9	بلمح	بلمع
Haal	9aal	حال	عال
minHa	min9a	منحه	منعة

Contrasts between /i9/ and /9a/:

saami9	saam9a	سامع	سامعة
saabi9	saab9a	سابع	سابعة
ṭaali9	ṭaal9a	طالع	طالعة
raaji9	raaj9a	راجع	راجعة

4. /x/ is pronounced by raising the back of the tongue to the position for /k/, but without blocking the air passage. It results in a friction sound, and is voiceless.

xeer	aaxir	خير	آخر
axuuya	xalli	اخوي	خل
muxx	xamsa	مخ	خمسة

Contrasts between /k/ and /x/:

kaaf	xaaf	كاف	خاف
kaan	xaan	كان	خان
akuun	axu	اكون	اخون
sakan	suxun	سكن	سخن

Contrasts between /H/ and /x/:

Haal	xaal	حال	خال
Haram	xaram	حرم	خرم
saHan	saxar	صحن	سخر

5. /gh/ is the voiced counterpart of /x/. It is pronounced by raising the back of the tongue to the position for /g/, but without blocking the air passage. It results in a friction sound, and is voiced.

gheer	ghaali	غير	غالي
baghdaad	abgha	بغداد	ابغى
dimaagh	ghariib	دماغ	غريب

Contrasts between /g/ and /gh/:

yibga	yibgha	يقن	يغنو
gariib	ghariib	قريب	غريب
saayig	saayigh	ساق	ساغ
guul	ghuul	قول	غول
istiglaal	istighlaal	استقلال	استغلال

Contrasts between /x/ and /gh/:

xeer	gheer	خير	غير
xaali	ghaali	خالي	غالي
yixayyiṭ	yighayyir	بخيط	بغير
maṭbax	mablagh	مطبخ	مبلغ

6. /q/ is pronounced farther back in the throat than /k/, accompanied by tightening the muscles at the top of the throat. The back of the tongue touches the top of the throat, then pulls away suddenly. (This sound occurs only in "classicized" words; it often alternates with /g/.)

qur'aan	قرآن
al-qaahira	القاهرة
iqtiṣaad	اقتصاد

Contrasts between /k/ and /q/:

kaaf	qaaf	كاف	قاف
kamaan	qaamuus	كمان	قاموس
istikraar	istiqbaal	استمرار	استقبال

7. /r/ is pronounced by tapping the tip of the tongue against the ridge above the upper teeth. The quality of /r/ may range from "light" to "heavy". This contrast, however, rarely makes a difference in the meaning of words.

ṣaarif	ṣaariṣ	عارف	شارع
raaH	raadyu	راح	راديو
ḡarab	garṣ	غرب	قرص
door	guruuṣ	دور	قروش
Haaḡir	xeer	حاضر	خير

When doubled, /rr/ is a trill, made by holding the tip of the tongue against this ridge and vibrating it.

marra	مرة
barra	بررا
murr	متر
Harr	حمر
xarraḡ	خرج

8. Velarized Consonants.

There are five consonants which are "velarized", and contrast with their "plain" counterparts. They will be symbolized with a comma under the letter: \dot{q} , \dot{s} , \dot{t} , \dot{z} , \dot{l} . They differ from the "plain" consonants in that the back of the tongue is raised toward the top of the mouth while the sound is being articulated at the front of the mouth, and the result is a resonant sound. This is also known as "emphasis", and has a noticeable lowering effect on surrounding vowels in the word.

Contrasts between /d/ and /ḡ/:

raadyu	raaḡi	راڊيو	راضي
daal	ḡaad	ڊال	ضار
9add	9aḡḡ	عد	عفر
dulaar	ḡuyuuḡ	ڊولار	ضيوف

Contrasts between /t/ and /ṭ/:

tiin	ṭiin	تين	طين
tuut	ṭuub	توت	طوب
taalit	ṭaali9	ثالث	طالع
gatal	giṭaar	قتل	قطار

Contrasts between /s/ and /ṣ/:

siin	ṣiin	سين	صين
seef	ṣeef	سيف	صيف
sab9a	ṣabagh	سبعة	صبع
xass	xaṣṣ	خمس	خمس
magaas	maḡaṣṣ	مقاسر	مقاس
gaas	giṣṣa	قاسر	قصة

Contrasts between /z/ and /ẓ/:

zeet	ẓahar	زيت	ظهر
mazkuur	maẓbuuṣ	مزكور	مظبوط

Contrasts between /l/ and /ḷ/:

lillaah	aḷlaah	لله	الله
---------	---------	-----	------

9. The "TH" Consonants.

Three consonants in Classical Arabic have been changed in Hijazi pronunciation. The Classical (and Najdi) pronunciation is heard often enough, however, that the student should be aware of the reason for the variation. The correspondences are:

th as in 'this' (voiced; the phonetic symbol is δ). This is usually pronounced as d or z:

haa δ a → haada
asta' δ an → asta'zan

th as in 'think' (voiceless; the phonetic symbol is θ). This is usually pronounced as t or s:

θ alaa θ a → talaata
ma θ alan → masalan

ṭh, which is th (voiced), pronounced with the back of the tongue raised (the phonetic symbol is ṭ). It is usually pronounced as z:

maḡbuuṭ → maḡbuuṭ

Of course this does not mean that all the occurrences of s, z, t, or d are in fact 'th' consonants; on the contrary, these consonants are relatively rare. z, however, is always ḡ in Classical Arabic.

Doubled Consonants

All consonants in Arabic may be doubled, and occur in the middle and at the end of words. In the case of sounds where friction is produced, doubling the consonant means holding it longer:

ṭili9	ṭalla9	تِلِي	تِلِيل
fihiṃ	fahham	فِيهِم	فِيهِم
daxal	daxxal	دَخَلَ	دَخَّل
min	sinn	مِنْ	سِنْ
ṣaghhiir	ṣaghghar	صَغِير	صَغِير
kam	damm	كَمْ	دَمْ

Some consonants are produced by completely stopping the flow of air. These cannot be actually "doubled", but holding them before releasing them gives that impression:

katiir	kattar	كَثِير	كَثِير
kabiir	kabbar	كَابِر	كَابِر
makaan	makka	مَكَان	مَكَان
baṭal	baṭṭaal	بَطَلَ	بَطَّل
mudun	mudda	مَدُن	مَدَّة
ṣugag	ṣagga	صُغِق	صُغِقَة

As noted above, /r/ changes its quality when doubled:

bara	barra	بَرَى	بَرَا
xaraj	xarraḡ	خَرَجَ	خَرَجَ
daras	darras	دَرَسَ	دَرَسَ

The Vowels

There are five basic vowels in Saudi Arabic; three may be long or short: /a,aa/, /i,ii/, and /u,uu/. Two usually occur as long vowels: /ee/ and /oo/ (because they came from Classical Arabic /ay/ and /aw/, so they are not fully part of the vowel system).

Note that the long vowels are held approximately twice as long as the short vowels, which affects the rhythm of the word.

1. /a,aa/. There is great variation in this vowel, ranging from the flat a of cat to the broad a of father. The pronunciation is usually predictable, and depends on the consonants around the vowel.

The broad /a/ occurs in the environment of the velarized consonants, at the end of words, and in most words which contain /r/ or /w/:

Harr	sayyaara	حَر	سَيَّارَة
ṣarabi	waaḡid	صَرَبِي	وَّاحِد
ṭayyiba	ṭaali9	طَيِّبَة	طَالِع
walad	raadyu	وَلَد	رَادِي

The flat /a/ occurs in any other environment:

malik	Haal	ملك	حال
xamsa	9aali	خمسة	عالي
galam	gaal	قلم	قال
kam	salaama	كم	سلامة

The quality of /a/ is not entirely predictable, however; for example, it is flat in some words which contain /r/ or /w/, such as /šaari9/ and /mawaad/. In such cases, follow the pronunciation of the instructor. There is great variation among Arabic dialects regarding the pronunciation of /a/, and the precise quality rarely affects the meaning of words.

2. /i,ii/. /i/ is pronounced like the i in bit except at the end of words; final /i/ and /ii/ are pronounced like the ee in meet, except that of course /ii/ is held for more time. Since the quality of these vowels differs, it is easy to hear and produce the difference, but remember that the long vowel must be held longer as well.

min	miin	مين	مين
inti	iidi	انتي	ايدي
hina	hiil	هنا	شيل
inta	ibrahim	انت	ابراهيم

3. /u,uu/. /u/ is pronounced like u in put, except at the end of words; final /u/ and /uu/ are pronounced like oo in cool.

judud	ma9guul	جُدُّ	مَعْقُول
ruHt	ruuHu	رُحْتُ	رُوحُوا
mumkin	tuul	مُمَكِّن	صُول
suftu	suug	سُفْتُوا	سُوق

4. /ee/ is pronounced like ai in bait, but it is held longer. It is also more tense.

beet	ma9aleeš	بيت	معلش
itneen	eeš	انئين	ايش
šeef	feen	صيف	فين

5. /oo/ is pronounced like the oa in coat, but it is held longer.

šoot	hadooL	صوت	هدول
loon	9irifoo	لون	عرفوه
moot	9irifooni	موت	عرفوني

Elision

When one word ends in a vowel and the next word begins with a vowel, they may be "elided" together in rapid speech. Dropping these vowels in the text, however, may lead to confusion for the student, who would have probably dropped one of them anyway in imitation of his instructor. For this reason, elision between words will not usually be shown in the transcription; rather, each word will be presented as a whole.

ya aHmad
(actually: ya Hmad)

'O Ahmad'

sana uula ibtidaa'i
(actually: san uula btidaa'i)

'first grade'

Some special elisions with the definite article, /al-/, will be shown in the text. The /a-/ is dropped after a word which ends in a vowel:

ma9a + al-9eela → ma9a l-9eela 'with the family'

There are also three short prepositions which are conventionally written attached to the /al-/:

fi + al-beet → fil-beet 'in the house'

li + aṭ-ṭawaabi9 → liṭ-ṭawaabi9 'for the stamps'

bi + at-tarjama → bit-tarjama 'with the translation'

Sometimes vowels inside of words are dropped or shortened, and this will be shown in the text; for example:

raaji9 + -a → raaj9a 'returning (f)'

amrikaani + -yya → amrikaniyya 'American (f)'

LESSON 1

Dialogue

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| A. Hello. | marHaba. | مرحبا . |
| how | keef | كيف |
| condition | Haal | حال |
| your (m) | -ak | كـ |
| B. Hello. How are you?
('How is your condition? ') | marHaba. keef Haalak? | مرحبا . كيف حالك؟ |
| fine, good | ṭayyib | طيب |
| glory | al-Hamdu | الحمد |
| to God | lillaah | لله |
| and | w | و |
| you (m) | inta | انت |
| A. Fine, thank God.
And you? | ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah. w inta? | طيب الحمد لله . وانت؟ |
| I | ana | انا |
| B. I'm fine [too],
thank God. | ana ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah. | انا طيب الحمد لله . |
| A. It's good to see you.
(lit., 'Welcome!') | ya hala. | يا هلا . |
| welcome | ahlan | اهلا |
| to you (m) | biik | بيك |
| B. I'm glad to see you,
too. (lit., 'Welcome to you.') | ahlan biik. | اهلا بيك . |

Grammatical Notes

1. You will note that the English translation is not always the exact equivalent of the Arabic expression. "Free", rather than "literal" translations in English will sometimes be used, to make the English more natural. The literal Arabic can be understood from the broken-up words preceding sentences.

2. Arabic has different forms for feminine singular and for plural. Most dialogues will be presented in the masculine singular form, and the other variations will occur in drills. Feminine and plural are marked by various sets of suffixes added to the masculine form; there are different suffixes for different parts of speech.

3. Sentences like /keef Haalak/, 'How is your condition?', and /ana ṭayyib/, 'I am fine', are examples of "equational sentences". An equational sentence is a simple type of sentence which has no verb. The subject is "equated" with the predicate, and the translation in English uses 'am', 'is', or 'are'.

4. The definite article, 'the', is /al-/ in Arabic, prefixed to a noun or adjective. It is not always translated in English. In rapid speech, the vowel may be lost when the preceding word ends in a vowel (see Classroom Expressions, below.)

5. The /wu/, 'and', may be reduced to /w/ or even /u/ when followed by a word which begins with a vowel.

6. If a word has a long vowel, it is stressed; if more than one, the last long vowel is stressed.

imtiHaan	su9uudiyiin
Haalak	šaafoo
salaama	
wizaaraat	

If it has short vowels, a word is stressed on the second-to-last syllable in two-syllable words, and the third-to-last syllable in all others.

inta	9āla
ṭayyiba	hūwwa
mādrasa	mūškila
ma9rifatak	kútub

If a word ends in a syllable which has two consonants, that syllable is stressed:

aHúbb
waṣált
atkallamt
tisa9ṭá9š

Stress is usually predictable; these general rules are sufficient to cover most cases. In words where the stress falls elsewhere, it will be marked.

Drills

1. (to a man) How are you? keef Haalak? كيف حالك؟

Substitute:

(to a woman) How are you? keef Haalik? كيف حالك؟

(to a group) How are you? keef Haalakum? كيف حالكم؟

2. Fine (m), thank God. ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah. طيب الحمد لله •

Substitute:

Fine (f), thank God. ṭayyiba, al-Hamdu lillaah. طيبة الحمد لله •

Fine (p), thank God. ṭayyibiin, al-Hamdu lillaah. طيبين الحمد لله •

3. (to a man) And you? w inta? و انت؟

Substitute:

(to a woman) w inti? و انت؟
And you?

(to a group) w intu? وانتو؟
And you?

4. (to a man) I'm glad ahlan biik. اهلا بيك.
to see you.

Substitute:

(to a woman) I'm ahlan biiki. اهلا بيكي.
glad to see you.

(to a group) I'm ahlan biikum. اهلا بكم.
glad to see you.

Exercise: Practice the dialogue in the feminine and plural.

Cultural Notes

1. Greetings in Arabic are important culturally, and several elaborate variations may be used (we have seen two forms of 'welcome' already). Mastering a variety of greeting exchanges is important to establish yourself as "well-mannered". The use of these and other types of speech exchanges which have been developed for different situations is much more important in the Arab world than in America.

Useful Classroom Expressions

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. (to a group) Repeat. | 9iidu. | عيدوا. |
| 2. Repeat the sentence. | 9iidu l-jumla. | عيدوا الجملة. |
| 3. Repeat the word. | 9iidu l-kilma. | عيدوا الكلمة. |
| 4. (to a group) Open your books. | iftaHu l-kutub. | افتحوا الكتب. |
| 5. (to a group) Close your books. | igfilu l-kutub. | اغللوا الكتب. |

Dialogue

morning	ṣabaaH	صباح
the goodness	al-xeer	الخير
A. Good morning. ('the morning of goodness')	ṣabaaH al-xeer.	صباح الخير
the light	an-nuur	النور
B. Good morning. ('the morning of light')	ṣabaaH an-nuur.	صباح النور
A. How are you (m)?	šloonaak?	شلووناك؟
B. Fine, thank God.	zeen, al-Hamdu lillaah.	زين الحمد لله
when	mita	متا
you (m) arrived	waṣalt	وصلت
A. When did you arrive?	mita waṣalt?	متا وصلت؟
B. Yesterday.	ams.	امس
for	9a (9ala)	ع - (على)
the safety	as-salaama	السلامة
A. Welcome back. ('Thank God for your safety')	al-Hamdu lillaah 9as-salaama.	الحمد لله ع السلامة
God	allaah	الله
B. Thanks. ('May God make you safe')	allaah yisallimak.	الله يسلمك

1. The words /an-nuur/, 'the light', and /as-salaama/, 'the safety', show the definite article becoming /an-/ and /as-/ instead of /al-/. This assimilation of the /l/ to the following consonant occurs with several consonants: t, d, z, r, s, š, ʃ, ʈ, ɖ, ʒ, l, n. You will soon learn to do this automatically.

2. The alternative words for 'How are you?' and 'Fine' are used commonly in the Najd area of Arabia, around Riyadh. The words in Lesson 1 are heard throughout Arabia, but more commonly on the western coast (the Hijaz).

3. In the afternoon and evening, you say "Good evening":

masaa' al-xeer.
('the evening of goodness')

مساء الخير .

Response:

masaa' an-nuur.
('the evening of light')

مساء النور .

4. /waṣalt/ is a verb in the perfect (past) tense; it has several suffixes for various persons, but will be drilled in this lesson for feminine and plural only.

5. The expression /al-Hamdu lillaah 9as-salaama/ is used when welcoming someone back from a trip or when he has recovered from an illness. It has a standard response.

6. /9a/, 'for', is a contraction of the full word /9ala/; it may be heard in rapid speech.

7. Note that the word /allaah/, 'God', is pronounced with emphasis and a lower /a/ when alone, and it becomes non-emphatic with a higher /a/ when prefixed.

Drills

1. (to a man) How are you? ṣloonaḵ? شلونك؟

Substitute:

(to a woman) How are you? ṣlooniḵ? شلونيك؟

(to a group) How are you? ṣloonaḵum? شلونكم؟

2. Fine (m), thank God. zeen, al-Hamdu lillaah. زين الحمد لله •

Substitute:

Fine (f), thank God. zeena, al-Hamdu lillaah. زينة الحمد لله •

Fine (p), thank God. zeen,* al-Hamdu lillaah. زين الحمد لله •

*Note that this word is not made plural.

3. (to a man) When did you arrive? mita waṣalt? متى وصلت؟

Substitute:

(to a woman) When did you arrive? mita waṣalti? متى وصلت؟

(to a group) When did you arrive? mita waṣaltu? متى وصلتوا؟

4. (to a man) May God make you safe. allaah yisallimak. الله يسلّمك •

Substitute:

(to a woman) May God make you safe. allaah yisallimik. الله يسلّمك •

(to a group) May God make you safe. allaah yisallimkum. الله يسلّمكم •

Exercise: Practice the dialogue in the feminine and plural.

Useful Classroom Expressions

1. Pardon? (I didn't understand)	na9am?	نعم؟
2. (to a man) Say it again, please.	guul marra taanya, min faḍlak.	قول مرة ثانية من فضلك.
3. (to a woman) Say it again, please.	guuli marra taanya, min faḍlik.	قولي مرة ثانية من فضلك.
4. Slowly.	b-ʔweeʔ.	بشويش.
5. (to a man) Do you understand?	faahim?	فاهم؟
6. (to a woman) Do you understand?	faahma?*	فاهمة؟
7. (to a group) Do you understand?	faahmiin?*	فاهمين؟
8. Yes, I (m) understand.	iiwa, faahim.	ايوه فاهم.
9. Yes, I (f) understand.	iiwa, faahma.	ايوه فاهمة.
10. Yes, we understand.	iiwa, faahmiin.	ايوه فاهمين.
11. No.	la'.	لا.
12. Correct.	ḡaHH	صح.
13. Wrong.	ḡhalaṭ.	غلط.

*Note that in these words, the /i/ is dropped ("elided") before the /-a/ and /-iin/ endings.

LESSON 3

Dialogue

(Visiting a home)

peace	salaam	سلام
upon	9alee-	علي-
you (p)	-kum	-كم
A. Peace be upon you.	as-salaamu 9aleekum.	السلام عليكم.
B. And upon you peace. Welcome.	wu 9aleekum as-salaam. ahlan wu sahlān.	و عليكم السلام. اهلا وسهلا.
A. Thanks. ('Welcome to you')	ahlan biik.	اهلا بك.
B. Come in.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل.
A. Thank you.	Ṣukran.	شكرا.
I like	aHubb	احب
I introduce	a9arrif	اعرف
you (m) (object)	-ak	-ك
Mr:	as-sayyid	السيد
B. I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad.	aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyid aHmad.	احب اعرفك على السيد احمد.
C. Pleased to meet you.	ahlan wu sahlān.	اهلا وسهلا.
this (m)	haada	هادا
he	huwwa	هو
from	min	من
B. This is Mr. Smith. He is American, from Chicago.	haada mistar Smith. huwwa amrikaani, min Chicago.	هادا مستر سميث. هو امريكاني من شكاغو.
by	b-	ب-
acquaintance	ma9rifa	معرفة
A. I'm honored to make your acquaintance. ('by your acquaintance')	atṣarraft b-ma9rifatkum.	انشرفت بمعرفتك.

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. I'd like to introduce you to Mrs. Farida. | aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyida fariida. | أحب اعرفك على السيدة فريدة. |
| 2. (to a woman) I'm honored to make your acquaintance. | atšarraft b-ma9rifatik. | أتشرفت بمعرفتك. |
| 3. I'd like to introduce you (p) to Miss Amal. | aHubb a9arrifkum 9ala l-'aanisa amaal. | أحب اعرفكم على الأنسة آمال. |
| 4. (to a woman) We're honored to make your acquaintance. | atšarrafna b-ma9rifatik. | أتشرفنا بمعرفتك. |
| 5. She is American. | hiyya amrikaniyya. | هي امركانية. |
| 6. She is Mrs. Farida. | hiyya s-sayyida fariida. | هي السيدة فريدة. |
| 7. Are you Miss Amal? | inti l-'aanisa amaal? | انت الأنسة آمال؟ |
| 8. I am American also. | ana amrikaani kamaan. | انا امركاني كمان. |
| 9. It's been a pleasure meeting you. ('happy occasion') | furša sa9iida. | فرصة سعيدة. |

Grammatical Notes

1. /atfaḍḍal/ is used for many situations; it may mean 'Come in', 'Sit down', 'Please go first', 'Please have some (food, drink)', 'Go ahead and ask (speak)'. Literally, it means 'be preferred', and is a command form. You will see the uses of this word in future lessons.

2. The suffixes for 'you' as a direct object are the same as for possession, /-ak/, /-ik/, and /-kum/. We used these endings in the phrase /allaah yisallimak/, and now in /a9arrifak/. These endings when following a vowel have a slightly different form for two persons:

/bi-/ 'to':	/ahlan biik/	Ending: /-k/ (m)
	/ahlan biiki/	/-ki/ (f)

The plural suffix remains the same:

/ahlan biikum/	/-kum/ (p)
----------------	------------

The complete set of suffixes will be discussed in future lessons.

3. In Arabic, the literal expression is 'to introduce on' someone; this is an idiom.

4. When an adjective ends in /i/, the feminine ending is /-yya/:

/amrikaani/
/amrikaniyya/

The vowel /aa/ is usually shortened when the feminine ending is added, although some speakers keep it long.

5. Arabic titles, such as /as-sayyid/, /as-sayyida/, and /al-'aanisa/ are usually used with the definite article.
6. /atšarraft/ and /atšarrafnā/ are actually passive verbs ('I am honored', etc.). They can be learned simply as vocabulary items at this point. This expression is more common in the Hijaz.
7. In the expression /atšarraft b-ma9rifatkum/, 'I'm honored by your acquaintance', note that the plural form may be used when speaking to one person. This is an honorific usage and shows respect. The expression /as-salaamu 9aleekum/ is used only in the plural form.
8. To ask a question which elicits a "yes" or "no" answer, simply raise your voice at the end of the sentence. Otherwise, it is a statement. (cf. Structure Sentence 7.)
9. /furša sa9iida/, 'happy occasion', may be used when meeting someone for the first time. The response is /ana as9ad/, 'I am happier'.

Drills

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. (to a man) Come in. | atfaḍḍal. | اتفضل. |
| Substitute: | | |
| (to a woman) Come in. | atfaḍḍali. | اتفضلي. |
| (to a group) Come in. | atfaḍḍalu. | اتفضلوا. |
| 2. (to a man) I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad. | aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyid aHmad. | احب اعرّفك على السيد احمد. |
| Substitute: | | |
| (to a woman) I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad. | aHubb a9arrifik 9ala s-sayyid aHmad. | احب اعرّفك على السيد احمد. |
| (to a group) I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad. | aHubb a9arrifkum 9ala s-sayyid aHmad. | احب اعرّفكم على السيد احمد. |
| 3. He is American. | huwwa amrikaani. | هو امركاني. |
| Substitute: | | |
| she | hiyya amrikaniyya. | هي امركانية. |
| 4. (to a man) I'm honored to make your acquaintance. | atšarraft b-ma9rifatak. | انشرفت بمعرفتك. |
| Substitute: | | |
| (to a woman) I'm honored to make your acquaintance. | atšarraft b-ma9rifatik. | انشرفت بمعرفتك. |
| (to a group) I'm honored to make your acquaintance. | atšarraft b-ma9rifatkum. | انشرفت بمعرفتكم. |

(to a group) We're honored to make your acquaintance.	atšarrafna b-ma9rifatkum.	انشرفنا بمعرفتكم
(to a woman) We're honored to make your acquaintance.	atšarrafna b-ma9rifatik.	انشرفنا بمعرفتك
(to a man) We're honored to make your acquaintance.	atšarrafna b-ma9rifatak.	انشرفنا بمعرفتك

Situations

Translate into Arabic:

1.
 - A. Good morning. Welcome.
 - B. Thank you.
 - A. How are you?
 - B. Fine, thanks, and you?
 - A. I, too (thank God).
2.
 - A. Good evening.
 - B. Good evening.
 - A. How are all of you?
 - B. Well, thanks. When did you all arrive?
 - A. Yesterday.
 - B. Welcome back.
 - A. Thanks.
3.
 - A. I'd like you to meet Mr. Ahmad.
 - B. Pleased to meet you.
 - C. I'm honored.
 - A. Please sit down (you two).
 - B. Are you American?
 - C. Yes, I am American. I am from New York.

Classroom Vocabulary

drill	tamriin	تمرين
pen	galam	قلم
book	kitaab	كتاب
piece of paper	waraga	ورقة
notebook	daftar	دفتر
examination	imtiHaan	امتحان
lesson	dars	درس

Cultural Notes

1. Arabs always give visitors a warm welcome to their home or office, and may repeat welcoming phrases over and over.
2. First names are usually used in the Arab naming system, and unless they know our system of using last names, they may call you by your first name, too. Titles are used with first names as well.

LESSON 4

Dialogue

you (m) speak	titkallam	تتكلم
Arabic	9arabi	عربي
good, well	kwayyis	كويس
where	feen	فين
you (m) studied	darast	درست
A. You speak Arabic well. Where did you study?	inta titkallam 9arabi kwayyis. feen darast?	انت تتكلم عربي كويس؟ فين درست؟
I studied	darast	درست
in	fi	في
institute	ma9had	معهد
belonging to	Hagg	عن
government	Hukuuma	حكومة
American	amrikiyya	امريكية
B. I studied in an institute of the American government.	ana darast fil-ma9had Hagg al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya.	انا درست في معهد عن الحكومة الامريكية.
A. How long?	gaddees?	قديبر؟
approximately	Hawaali	حوالي
six	sitta	ستة
months	ṣuḥuur	شهور
B. About six months.	Hawaali sitta ṣuḥuur.	حوالي ستة شهور.
only	bass	بس.
not	muu	مو
possible	mumkin	ممکن
A. Only [that]? It's not possible!	bass? muu mumkin!	بس؟ مو ممکن!
well	ṭayyib	طيب
with	ma9a	مع
B. Well, goodbye. ('with safety')	ṭayyib, ma9a s-salaama.	طيب مع السلامة.
A. Goodby. ('May God make you safe')	aḷḷaah yisallimak.	الله يسلمك.

Structure Sentences

1. Where did they study?	feen darasu?	فين درسوا؟
2. We studied in school.	darasna fil-madrasa.	درسنا في المدرسة.
3. She studied in an institute.	darasat fi ma9had.	درست في معهد.
4. She spoke Arabic.	atkallamat 9arabi.	اتكلمت عربي.
5. Did you (p) speak English?	atkallamtu ingiliizi?	اتكلمتوا انكليزي؟
6. We arrived safely.	wa9alna bis-salaama.	وصلنا بالسلامة.
7. Where is the American institute?	feen al-ma9had al-amriiki?	فين المعهد الامريكي؟
8. He introduced Mr. Jones to Mr. Ahmad.	9arrafa mistar Jones 9ala s-sayyid aHmad.	عرف مستر جونز على السيد احمد.
9. How did he know?	keef 9irif?	كيف عرف؟
10. He studied the Arabic language.	daras al-lugha l-9arabiyya.	درس اللغة العربية.

Grammatical Notes

1. /kwayyis/ may be used as 'good' or 'well'; it alternates with /ṭayyib/, and is more used in the Hijaz. It is not a Saudi word; it was borrowed from the Egyptian dialect.

2. The perfect (past) tense of the verb expresses persons by using suffixes; it is known as the "suffix" tense. One type of regular verb is represented by /daras/, 'to study', and /9irif/, 'to know'. (There is no infinitive form, so verbs are cited in the 'he' form.) Forms are based on the 'he' form, and are listed in the traditional Arabic order of conjugation:

daras	he studied	9irif	he knew	عرف	درس
darasat	she studied	9irifat	she knew	عرفت	درست
darasu	they studied	9irifu	they knew	عرفوا	درسوا
darast	you (m) studied	9irift	you (m) knew	عرفت	درست
darasti	you (f) studied	9irifti	you (f) knew	عرفت	درست
darastu	you (p) studied	9iriftu	you (p) knew	عرفتوا	درسوا
darast	I studied	9irift	I knew	عرفت	درست
darasna	we studied	9irifna	we knew	عرفنا	درسنا

Note the regular shift in stress.

The forms for 'you (m)' and 'I' are the same.

/atkallam/, 'to speak' and /9arrafa/, 'to introduce', represent another type of verb, in which the middle consonant is doubled:

atkallam	he spoke	9arrafa	he introduced	عرف	اتكلم
atkallamat	she spoke	9arrafat	she introduced	عرفت	اتكلمت
atkallamu	they spoke	9arrafu	they introduced	عرفوا	اتكلموا
atkallamt	you (m) spoke	9arraft	you (m) introduced	عرفت	اتكلمت
atkallamti	you (f) spoke	9arrafti	you (f) introduced	عرفت	اتكلمت
atkallamtu	you (p) spoke	9arraftu	you (p) introduced	عرفتوا	اتكلموا

atkallamt I spoke
atkallamna we spoke

9arraft I introduced
9arrafna we introduced

اتكلمت
اتكلمنا

Note the regular shift in stress.

3. Arabic nouns are either masculine or feminine, including inanimate nouns. Almost all feminine nouns end in /-a/ and are easily recognized. (There are only a few nouns which end in /-a/ and are masculine; this is rare.)

The adjective and verb must agree in gender and number with the noun.

(masculine) al-ma9had al-amriiki 'the American institute'
(feminine) al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya 'the American government'

4. The phrase /al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya/ is a definite noun phrase, 'the American government'. In Arabic, when the definite article /al-/ is used with the noun, it must also be used with the adjective; the literal translation would be 'the government the American'.

5. The word /Hagg/ changes if the noun it refers to is feminine or plural; it is used when referring to a definite noun.

(masculine) al-ma9had Hagg al-Hukuuma
('institute')

(feminine) al-madrasa Haggat al-Hukuuma
('school')

(plural) al-kutub Haggoon al-Hukuuma
('books')

6. The words /amriiki/ and /amrikiyya/ are used here for 'American'. /amrikaani/ and /amrikaniyya/ refer to people (and some other nouns), while /amriiki/ and /amrikiyya/ are often reserved for abstract or inanimate nouns (although some speakers use them exclusively); they are more "classical". Note that the /ii/ in /amriiki/ is shortened when the feminine suffix is added.

7. /gaddees/ literally means 'what amount?', and can be used in other situations as well, referring not only to time, as here, but amounts of money, length, weight, etc.

8. The word /lugha/, 'language', is feminine, so the adjective must also be feminine:

al-lugha l-9arabiyya 'the Arabic language'

When the word /lugha/ is not used, a language is cited in the masculine form:

inta titkallam 9arabi kwayyis. 'You speak Arabic well.'

The phrase, /al-lugha l-9arabiyya/, 'the Arabic language', usually refers to Classical Arabic, not the colloquial dialects.

9. There is no indefinite article in Arabic (equivalent to 'a' or 'an' in English). (cf. Structure Sentence 3.)

Vocabulary Notes

Verbs (patterned like /daras/ and /9irif/)

daras	study	9irif	know
fataH	open		
gafal	close		
katab	write		
wa9al	arrive		

عرف
درس
فتح
غلق
كتب
وصل

Languages (These words are also nationalities; add /-yya/ for the feminine ending.)

lugha	language	لغة
9arabi	Arab, Arabic	عربي
ingiliizi	English	انكليزي
faransaawi	French	فرنساوي
asbaani	Spanish	اسباني
almaani	German	المانى
ruusi	Russian	روسي

Drills

For substitution drills, parts of the drill which may be substituted will be underlined. Cue words may be in English or in Arabic. The full response in Arabic will no longer be written out.

1. Where did you (m) study Arabic? feen darast 9arabi? فين درست عربي؟

Substitute:

you (f)
you (p)
when
she
French
he
Spanish
where
they
you (m)
Arabic

2. I studied in an institute. darast fi ma9had. درست في معهد.

Substitute:

we
they
school
he
she
institute
I

3. We spoke Arabic. atkallamna 9arabi. اتكلمنا عربي.

Substitute:

they
German
I
Russian
he
we
Arabic

4. They arrived safely. waṣalu bis-salaama. وصلوا بالسلامة.

Substitute:

we
he
she
I
you (f)
you (p)
we
they

5. Mr. Robert is French. as-sayyid Robert السيد روبير فرنساوي.
 faransaawi.

Substitute:

Mrs. Marie
Miss Marie
German
Mr. Robert
Russian
Are you (m) Russian?
you (f)
Arab
I am Arab.
American
Mr. Robert
French

6. How did you (m) keef 9irift haada? كيف عرفت هادا؟
 know this?

Substitute:

you (p)
you (f)
when
you (m)
how

7. When did they close mita gafalu l-madrassa? منا فغلوا المدرسة؟
 the school?

Substitute:

open
you (m)
the institute
the books
close
you (f)
they
the school

8. Answer the questions:

Example:

min feen as-sayyid Ford? → huwwa amrikaani. من فين السيد فورد؟
 هو امركاني.

Continue, substituting:

as-sayyid Brandt
as-sayyida Farida
as-sayyid Brezhnev
as-sayyid Heath

Situations

Translate into Arabic:

1.
A. Where is John?
B. At school. He arrived yesterday.
A. Safely?
B. Yes, thank God.
A. How did you know?
B. From Ahmad.
2.
A. You speak English well.
B. I studied English in school. I studied French. too.
A. Are you from Jidda?
B. Yes, how did you know?
3.
A. Welcome. Have a chair.
B. Thanks.
A. You're welcome.
B. How long did you work in the government?
A. About six months.
B. I must be going now.
A. Go safely.
B. 'Thanks'. (response)
4.
A. Is she American?
B. Yes. I'd like to introduce you to Miss Jones.
A. I'm honored. When did you arrive?
B. Yesterday.
A. Where did you study Arabic?
B. I studied in school.

LESSON 5

Dialogue

- A. Do you speak English? inta titkallam ingiliizi? انت تنكلم انكليزي؟
 a little šwayya شويه
 much katiir كثير
- B. Yes, a little. iiwa, šwayya. muu katiir. ايوه شويه .. مو كثير
 Not much.
 you (m) tell tiguul تقول
 to me -li لي-
 what eeš ايش
 his name ismu اسمه
- A. Could you tell me what mumkin tigulli 'car' eeš ممكن تقوللي "كار" ايش
 'car' means in Arabic? ismu bil-9arabi? اسمه بالعربي؟
 it means ya9ni يعني
- B. 'Car' means /sayyaara/ 'car' ya9ni sayyaara "كار" يعني سيارة بالعربي
 in Arabic. bil-9arabi.
- A. Thank you. šukran. شكرا
 B. You're welcome. 9afwan. عفوا

Structure Sentences

1. He speaks Arabic well. huwwa yitkallam 9arabi هو يتكلم عربي كويس
 kwayyis.
2. I speak French a little. ana atkallam faransaawi انا انكلم فرنساوي شويه
 šwayya.
3. She wrote in Arabic. hiyya katabat bil-9arabi. هي كتبت بالعربي
4. What did they do eeš sawwu ams? ايش سؤوا امس؟
 yesterday?
5. We wrote a lot. katabna katiir. كتبنا كثير
6. The car is here. as-sayyaara hina. السيارة هنا
7. The books are there. al-kutub hinaak. الكتب هناك

Grammatical Notes

1. The imperfect (present) tense of the verb expresses persons by using mostly prefixes, sometimes prefix-suffix combinations; it is known as the "prefix" tense. Forms in the imperfect tense are also based on the 'he' form. The imperfect forms of /daras/ are /9irif/ are:

yidrus	he studies	y9irif	he knows
tidrus	she studies	ti9rif	she knows
yidrusu	they study	y9rifu	they know

tidrus	you (m) study	ti9rif	you (m) know
tidrusi	you (f) study	ti9rifi	you (f) know
tidrusu	you (p) study	ti9rifu	you (p) know
adrus	I study	a9rif	I know
nidrus	we study	ni9rif	we know

Note that the forms for 'she' and 'you (m)' are the same.

Verbs of the /kallam/ type:

yitkallam	he speaks	yi9arrif	he introduces
titkallam	she speaks	ti9arrif	she introduces
yitkallamu	they speak	yi9arrifu	they introduce
titkallam	you (m) speak	ti9arrif	you (m) introduce
titkallami	you (f) speak	ti9arrifi	you (f) introduce
titkallamu	you (p) speak	ti9arrifu	you (p) introduce
atkallam	I speak	a9arrif	I introduce
nitkallam	we speak	ni9arrif	we introduce

The imperfect tense is used to express action which is repetitive, e.g., 'he studies every day', and progressive, e.g., 'he is studying now'. This is further discussed in Lessons 25 and 36.

From now on, learn the perfect and imperfect tenses of these verbs together (do not guess; there may be variations in the vowels). Verbs will be cited in vocabulary lists in the 'he' form only.

2. By comparing words which share the same type of meaning, we notice that Arabic retains the same combination of consonants in the words, but changes vowel patterns and adds suffixes and prefixes. These inter-related patterns are predictable in Arabic and form categories of words. For example, /daras/, /yidrus/, and /madrasa/ (a school is a 'place of study') share the consonants /d-r-s/. Similarly, /atkallam/, /yitkallam/ and /kilma/ share /k-l-m/, and /katab/ is related to /kutub/, 'books'.

The three consonants on which most words are built are called the "root" of the word. The "root-pattern" system is basic to understanding how words are formed in Arabic, and will be expanded upon as we come to new categories. Keeping this principle in mind will help you guess and remember the meanings of many words.

3. To say 'in Arabic' or 'in English', etc., a phrase with /b-/ is used, and the definite article:

/bil-9arabi/	'by the Arabic'
/bil-ingiliizi/	'by the English'

This is an idiom.

4. /mumkin/ is an adjective meaning 'possible', introduced in the last lesson. It may also be used with a verb in the imperfect tense to mean 'Could you...?' or 'You may...', and as a form for a polite request, 'Would you...?'.

mumkin tigulli?	Could you tell me?
mumkin ti9arrif	Would you [please] introduce
John 9ala aHmad?	John to Ahmad?

5. Note that /tiguul/, 'you (m) tell', becomes /tigul-/ in combination with /-li/. This shortening of the vowel is explained in Lesson 7.

6. /ʔafwan/ may also mean 'sorry' or 'pardon', as used when interrupting or correcting someone, after coughing, etc.

Vocabulary Notes

Regular verbs (a)

daras, yidrus study
fataH, yiftaH open
gafal, yigfil close
katab, yiktub write
waṣal, yiwaṣal arrive

Regular verbs (i)

9irif, yi9rif know عرف يعرف
درس يدرس
فتح يفتح
غفل يغفل
كتب يكتب
وصل يصل

Verbs with doubled medial consonant

atkallam, yitkallam speak
9arraḥ, yi9arraḥ introduce

اتكلم يتكلم
عرف يعرف

Drills

1. Given the cue word in the imperfect tense, change it to perfect, and vice versa:

yiktub
yiftaH
nigfil
yi9rifu
tiwaṣali
adrus
darasat
katabtu
(inta) gafalt
waṣalna
fataHu
(ana) 9irift

يكتب
يفتح
نغفل
يعرفوا
توصلني
ادرس
دارست
كتبتوا
(أنت) قلت
وصلنا
فتحوا
(أنا) عرفت

2. You (m) speak English well.

inta titkallam ingiliizi
kwayyis.

انت تتكلم انكليزي كويس

Substitute:

you (f)
you (p)
I
know
Arabic
he
she
English
speaks
you (m)

3. Can you (m) speak Arabic?

mumkin titkallam
9arabi?

ممکن تتكلم عربي؟

Substitute:

we
French
they
I

he
Arabic
she
you (m)

4. Would you (m) introduce John to Ahmad? mumkin ti9arrif John 9ala ahmad? ممكن تعرف جون على احمد؟

Substitute:

Would you (f) introduce John to Ahmad?
May I introduce John to Ahmad?
May I introduce you (m) to Ahmad?
May we introduce you (m) to Ahmad?
May John introduce you (m) to Ahmad?

5. He talked a lot. atkallam katiir. اتكلم كثير.

Substitute:

we
she
a little
they
in Arabic
I
a lot in Arabic
he
a lot

6. How do you (m) open this? keef tiftaH haada? كيف تفتح هادا؟

Substitute:

close
write
you (f)
I
you (p)
know
close
we
open
you (m)

7. Given the sentence in the masculine, change it to feminine:

šloonak?
allaah yisallimak.
atfaḍḍal.
huwwa s-sayyid Jones.
ana amrikaani.
haada Haggi.
daras 9arabi.

شلونك؟
الله يسلمك.
اتفضل.
هو السيد جونز.
انا امركاني.
هادا حقي.
درس عربي.

Situations

1.
 - A. Do you know his name?
 - B. No. What is his name?
 - A. Ahmad. He is from the government.
 - B. When did he arrive?
 - A. In the evening.

2.
A. Can you tell me where John is?
B. At school.
A. Does he know English?
B. Not much...he's German.
A. I understand.
3.
A. I know English a little.
B. Good. You speak well.
A. Thanks. Where is the car?
B. Here. The car belongs to the American government.
A. Well, goodbye.
B. Goodby.
4.
A. I'm American.
B. Welcome. From where in America?
A. From New York. Have you heard of New York?
(literally, 'Do you know New York?')
B. Yes, a little.
A. How did you arrive from the school?
B. By car.

LESSON 6

Dialogue

A. Welcome. Come in.	ahlan. atfaḍḍal.	اهلا . اتفضل .
B. Thank you. ('I thank you (m)')	aṣkurak.	اشكر .
A. Excuse me...	9afwan...	عفو . . .
B. Go ahead.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل .
A. What is your name?	eeṣ ismak?	ايش اسمك؟
name	ism	اسم
B. My name is John Smith. (word for direct address)	ismi John Smith. ya	اسمي جون سميث يا
A. Welcome, John.	ahlan wu sahlān ya John.	اهلا وسهلا يا جون .

Structure Sentences

1. They studied a lot.	humma darasu katiir.	هم درسوا كثير .
2. We know Mr. Smith well.	iHna ni9rif mistar Smith kwayyis.	احنا نعرف مستر سميث كويس .
3. He knows us, too.	huwwa yi9rifna kamaan.	هو يعرفنا كامان .
4. I know him a little.	ana a9rifu ṣwayya.	انا اعرفه شويه .
5. Excuse me (to a group).	9an iznakum.	عن اذنكم .
6. What's her name?	eeṣ ismaha?	ايش اسمها؟
7. Where is their car?	feen sayyaarathum?	فين سيارتهم؟
8. This is our school.	haadi madrasatna.	هادي مدرستنا .
9. We thank you all.	nuṣkurkum.	نشكركم .

Grammatical Notes

1. /aṣkurak/ is a variation for 'thank you'. It can be conjugated as a verb in the imperfect tense, and the person endings at the end can be varied. It is most often used in the 'I' and 'we' forms.

2. The full set of personal pronouns is:

he	huwwa	هو
she	hiyya	هي
they	humma	هم
you (m)	inta	انت
you (f)	inti	انتر
you (p)	intu	انتو
	ana	انا
	iHna	احنا

Personal pronouns are used most often in equational sentences, for example:

huwwa amrikaani. He is an American.

hiyya hina. She is here.

They may be used with verbs, but it is not necessary; their use may also make the sentence sound emphatic:

keef Haalak? How are you?

keef Haalak inta? How are you?

Do not overuse pronouns; you will notice that they are needed less in Arabic than in English.

3. Several types of pronouns in Arabic are suffixed to the end of words. Their forms may vary slightly, depending on the shape of the word to which they are suffixed.

A. The Direct Object Pronouns are:

him	-u	yi9rifu	He knows him.	يعرفه
her	-ha	yi9rifha	He knows her.	يعرفها
them	-hum	yi9rifhum	He knows them.	يعرفهم
you (m)	-ak	yi9rifak	He knows you (m).	يعرفك
you (f)	-ik	yi9rifik	He knows you (f).	يعرفكِ
you (p)	-kum	yi9rifkum	He knows you (p).	يعرفكم
me	-ni	yi9rifni	He knows me.	يعرفني
us	-na	yi9rifna	He knows us.	يعرفنا

Modifications:

(1) After a word which ends in two consonants, or which has a long vowel in the last syllable, /-a-/ is inserted before suffixes which begin with a consonant: /-ha/, /-hum/, /-kum/, /-ni/, /-na/:

9irift	I knew;	9iriftaha	I knew her.	عرفتها
	you (m) knew	9iriftahum	I knew them.	عرفتهم
		9iriftakum	I knew you (p).	عرفتكم
		9iriftani	You (m) knew me.	عرفتني
		9iriftana	You (m) knew us.	عرفتنا

(2) After a word which ends in a vowel, that vowel is lengthened and stressed before adding suffixes. In addition, a change occurs in the three suffixes which begin with a vowel, /-u/, /-ak/, /-ik/:

9irifna	we knew	9irifnaa	We knew him.	عرفناه
		9irifnaahum	We knew them.	عرفناهم
		9irifnaaha	We knew her.	عرفناها
yi9rifu	they know	yi9rifuu	They know him.	يعرفونه
		yi9rifuuni	They know me.	يعرفوني
		yi9rifuukum	They know you (p).	يعرفوكم
		yi9rifuuk	They know you (m).	يعرفوك
		yi9rifuuki	They know you (f).	يعرفوكِ

Note that the 'him' form is expressed by lengthening whichever vowel occurs, and switching stress to that syllable.

The distinction between 'you (m)' and 'you (f)' is made by the forms /-k/ and /-ki/.

(3) The verb form for 'they' in the perfect changes to the base form with /oo/ at the end, when used before suffixes, for example, /9irifoo-/:

9irifu	they knew	9irifoo	They knew him.	عرفوه
		9irifoooha	They knew her.	عرفوها
		9irifooohum	They knew them.	عرفوهم
		9irifook	They knew you (m).	عرفوك
		9irifooki	They knew you (f).	عرفوكي
		9irifookum	They knew you (p).	عرفوكم
		9irifooni	They knew me.	عرفوني
		9irifoona	They knew us.	عرفونا

B. The Possessive Pronouns are:

his	-u	galamu	his pen	قلمه
her	-ha	galamha	her pen	قلمها
their	-hum	galamhum	their pen	قلمهم
your (m)	-ak	galamak	your (m) pen	قلمك
your (f)	-ik	galamik	your (f) pen	قلمك
your (p)	-kum	galamkum	your (p) pen	قلمكم
my	-i	galami	my pen	قلمي
our	-na	galamna	our pen	قلمنا

These suffixes are the same as the direct object pronoun suffixes, except for the 'my' form.

Modifications:

(1) For these suffixes also, when a word ends in two consonants or has a long vowel in the last syllable, /-a/ is inserted before those which begin with a consonant: /-ha/, /-hum/, /-kum/, /-na/:

ism	name	ismaha	her name	اسمها
		ismahum	their name	اسمهم
		ismakum	your (p) name	اسمكم
		ismaana	our name	اسمنا
Haal	condition	Haalaha	her condition	حالتها
		Haalahum	their condition	حالتهم
		Haalakum	your (p) condition	حالتكم
		Haalana	our condition	حالتنا

(2) When a noun is feminine and ends in /-a/, a /-t-/ is inserted before the suffixes, resulting in /-at-/ before the suffix. The second-to-last syllable (before the /t/) is stressed.

madrasa	school	madrasātu	his school	مدرسته
		madrasātha	her school	مدرستها
		madrasāthum	their school	مدرستهم
		madrasātak	your (m) school	مدرستك
		madrasātik	your (f) school	مدرستك
		madrasātkum	your (p) school	مدرستكم
		madrasāti	my school	مدرستي
		madrasātna	our school	مدرستنا

ma9rifa	acquaintance	ma9rifatak	your (m) acquaintance	معرفةك
		ma9rifatik	your (f) acquaintance	معرفةكِ
		ma9rifatkum	your (p) acquaintance	معرفةكم

(3) When a noun ends in a vowel (other than the /-a/ of the feminine), the suffixes are the same as those of direct object pronouns after nouns ending in a vowel (see modification 2, on page 24) with the exception of the 'my' form, which is /-yya/:

kursi	chair	kursii	his chair	كرسيه
		kursiia	her chair	كرسيها
		kursiikum	their chair	كرسيهم
		kursiik	your (m) chair	كرسيك
		kursiiki	your (f) chair	كرسيكِ
		kursiikum	your (p) chair	كرسيكم
		kursiyya	my chair	كرسيي
		kursiina	our chair	كرسينا

While this appears to be a great amount of material, with a little practice, you will see that relatively few variations need to be kept in mind. The main points of difference are:

1. If the word ends in two consonants or has a long vowel in the last syllable, add /-a-/ before the suffixes which begin with a consonant.
2. If the word ends in a vowel (other than the /-a/ of the feminine), lengthen it for 'him' or 'his', and use /-k/ and /-ki/ for 'you' and 'your' (m,f).
3. Remember to use /-at-/ after feminine nouns, before possessive endings.
4. Note the difference between /-ni/, 'me', and /-i/, 'my'.
4. /ya/ is called the "vocative particle"; it is used before a name or title to indicate that the speaker is addressing that person (similar to old English usage of "O", as in "O Lord..."). It may also be used with a noun, to mean a casual 'hey!', as in 'hey boy!'

Note that when using /ya/, a title does not have /al-/:

ya sayyid John
ya aHmad
ya aanisa

5. The three pronouns for 'this' are:

haada	this (m)	هأا
haadi	this (f)	هأا
hadool	these	هأول

Vocabulary Notes

Masculine nouns

Feminine nouns

galam	pen	ghurfa	room
kitaab	book	ṭarabiiza	table
baab	door	saa9a	watch, clock
kursi	chair	sayyaara	car
		maaṣa	desk

قلم
كتاب
باب
كرسي

غرفة
صريضة
ساعة
سيارة
مأصة

Drills

1. I thank you (m). aṣkurak. اشكرُك.
 Substitute:
 We thank you (m).
 We thank you (f).
 We thank you (p).
 I thank you (p).
 I thank you (f).
 I thank them.
 I thank you (m).

2. With your (m) 9an iznak. عن اذنك.
 permission.
 Substitute:
 your (f)
 your (p)

3. He knows his name. huwwa yi9rif ismu. هو يعرف اسمه.
 Substitute:
 Does he know his name?
 my name
 He knows your (m) name.
 she
 her name
 they
 our name
 you (p)
 you (f)
 my name
 he
 his name

4. Where is their car? feen sayyaarathum? فين سيارتهم?
 Substitute:
 our car
 his car
 her car
 her desk
 my desk
 my watch
 her watch
 your (m) watch
 your (m) book
 her book
 her room
 your (f) room
 their room
 their table
 your (p) table
 your (p) chair
 my chair
 his chair
 his car
 your (p) car
 their car

5. He knew him.

huwwa 9irifu.

هو عرفه .

Substitute:

She knew him.
 She knew me.
 They knew me.
 They knew you (m).
 They knew you (f).
 I knew you (f).
 We knew you (f).
 We knew them.
 We knew you (f).
 She knew you (f).
 She knew him.
 He knew him.

6. I opened it.

ana fatahtu.

انا فتحت .

Substitute:

We opened it.
 They opened it.
 They opened them.
 He opened them.
 He closed them.
 You (f) closed them.
 You (m) closed them.
 I closed them.
 I closed it.
 I opened it.

7. Given the cue word in Arabic, respond, saying 'This is a ____', and translate into English:

Example:

galam → haada galam.
 sayyaara → haadi sayyaara.

قلم ← هادا قلم.
 سيارة ← هادي سيارة.

Continue:

ṭarabiiza
 kursi
 saa9a
 kutub
 kitaab
 maaṣa
 baab
 madrasa
 as-sayyid Smith
 al-'aanisa Jones

طربيزة
 كرسي
 ساعة
 كتب
 كتاب
 ماعة
 باب
 مدرسة
 السيد سميث
 الانسة جونز

8. Given the cue phrase in English, respond, saying 'This is ____',
 'These are ____':

Example:

my books → hadool kutubi.
 his car → haadi sayyaaratu.

حدول كتبتي .
 هادي سيارته .

Continue:

her room
Is this your (m) pen?
his watch?
your (m) chair?
These are their books.
Are these your (p) books?
This is my chair.
my school
Is this your (f) car?
his name?
These are our books.
their room
my desk

Situations

1.
A. Excuse me, is this your car?
B. Yes, it belongs to me.
A. Do these books belong to you too?
B. Yes, they are Arabic books.
2.
A. Can you open the door a little?
B. Is this too much?
(literally, 'Is this much?')
A. No, that's good. (literally,
'This is good.') Thanks.
B. You're welcome.
3.
A. Where is Ahmad?
B. Pardon?
A. Do you know where Ahmad is?
B. In his room.
A. Is this his watch?
B. No, his watch is on the table.
4.
A. (To a girl) Excuse me, are you American?
B. Yes, I'm from New York.
A. Did you study Arabic?
B. Yes, a little.
A. How long?
B. Six months.
A. You speak well.
B. Thanks.

LESSON 7

Dialogue

(Going through a doorway)

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| A. Go ahead. | atfaḍḍal. | اتفضل. |
| B. No, you go ahead. | la', atfaḍḍal inta. | لا، اتفضل انت. |
| first | al-awwal | الاول |
| A. You first. | inta l-awwal. | انت الاول. |
| OK | ṭayyib | طيب |
| thanked (m) | maṣkuur | مشكور |
| B. OK, thanks...('you (m) are thanked') | ṭayyib, maṣkuur... | طيب مشكور... |
| family | 9eela | عيلة |
| A. How's the family? | keef al-9eela? | كيف العيلة؟ |
| wife | zawja | زوجة |
| children | awlaad | اولاد |
| they greet | yisallimu | يسلموا |
| on you (m) | 9aleek | عليك |
| B. My wife and children are fine, thank God. They greet you. | zawjati w awlaadi ṭayyibiin, al-Hamdu lillaah, yisallimu 9aleek. | زوجتي واولادي طيبين الحمد لله يسلموا عليك. |
| after | ba9d | بعد |
| necessary | laazim | لازم |
| I take leave | asta'zin | استأذن |
| now | al-Hiin | الحين |
| A. With your permission, I must be going now. ('take leave now') | ba9d iznak, laazim asta'zin al-Hiin. | بعد ازنيك لازم استأذن الحين. |
| B. It's early! | badri! | بدري! |
| by God (oath) | waḷlah | ولله |
| A. No, (by God), I must. | la', waḷlah, laazim. | لا، والله لازم. |
| B. Go ahead. | atfaḍḍal. | اتفضل. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. He told me his name. | galli ismu. | قال لي اسمه . |
| 2. She told us where her house is. | gaalatlana feen beetaha. | قالت لنا أين بيتها . |
| 3. I must write to my family. | laazim aktub li-9eelati. | لازم اكتب لعيلتي . |
| 4. I thank you (p). ('You (p) are thanked.') | intu maškuuriin. | انتو مشكورين . |
| 5. We must arrive early. | laazim niwšal badri. | لازم نوصل بدري . |
| 6. They arrived first. | humma wašalu l-awwal. | هم وصلوا الاول . |
| 7. They greeted me. | sallamu 9alayya. | سلموا علي . |
| 8. I greeted them (i.e., shook hands) and then left. | sallamt 9aleehum w asta'zant. | سلمت عليهم واستأذنت . |
| 9. May I use your car? | mumkin asta9mil sayyaaratak? | ممكن استعمال سيارتك؟ |
| 10. Yes, you (m) can use it. | iiwa, mumkin tista9milha. | ايوه ممكن تستعملها . |
| 11. Have you (m) seen Ahmad? | Šuft aHmad? | شفت احمد؟ |
| 12. I went home. | ruHt al-beet. | رحت البيت . |

Grammatical Notes

1. /maškuur/ may be translated into English as 'thank you', although it literally means 'thanked' and is an adjective. The feminine and plural are regular: /maškuura/, /maškuuriin/. Note that the adjective refers to the person who is thanked, not the speaker.
2. /9eela/ is translated 'family'; it usually refers to one's immediate family--either spouse and children, or parents, brothers and sisters if one is unmarried. The word /ahl/ is also used to mean immediate family or wife; it more often refers to the extended family.
3. /yisallimu 9aleek/, literally, 'they greet on you (m)', is an idiomatic expression, and is often added when commenting about someone else; it is part of the formula and may not be meant literally. It is common to respond to this with /allaah yisallimhum/ (or the response conjugated for the appropriate person).
4. The preposition /9ala/, 'on', may take possessive pronoun suffixes, which are formed in the regular way for a word ending in a vowel. The 'base' form to which suffixes are added is /9alee-/. Note that the 'I' form is irregular:

9alee	on him	عليه
9aleeha	on her	عليها
9aleehum	on them	عليهم
9aleek	on you (m)	عليك
9aleeki	on you (f)	عليكِ
9aleekum	on you (p)	عليكم
9alayya	on me	عليّ
9aleena	on us	علينا

5. /laazim/, 'necessary', may be used with verbs in the imperfect tense to mean 'must' or 'it is necessary...'. /laazim/ and /mumkin/ are examples of 'modals' or helping words which are used with verbs in the imperfect tense, and are quite numerous in Arabic.
6. /al-Hiin/, 'now', alternates freely with /daHHiin/, the latter being more urban and more common on the western coast.
7. Indirect object pronouns are used with the preposition /l-/ , 'to', 'for', and are suffixed to the verb. The forms change slightly depending on the form of the verb. Basic forms are:

Indirect Object Pronouns:

to him (for him)	-lu
to her (for her)	-laha
to them (for them)	-lahum
to you (m) (for you)	-lak
to you (f) (for you)	-lik
to you (p) (for you)	-lakum
to me (for me)	-li
to us (for us)	-lana

These forms occur with a verb which ends in a consonant. Note that the words are stressed on the second-to-last syllable:

Perfect(katab)

katáblu	He wrote to him.	كَتَبَ لَهُ
katabláha	He wrote to her.	كَتَبَ لَهَا
katabláhum	He wrote to them.	كَتَبَ لَهُمْ
katáblak	He wrote to you (m).	كَتَبَ لَكَ
katablík	He wrote to you (f).	كَتَبَ لِكْ
katabláhum	He wrote to you (p).	كَتَبَ لَكُمْ
katábli	He wrote to me.	كَتَبَ لِي
katablána	He wrote to us.	كَتَبَ لَنَا

(katabat)

katabátlu	She wrote to him.	كَتَبَتْ لَهُ
katabatláha	She wrote to her.	كَتَبَتْ لَهَا
(etc.)		

Imperfect(yiktub)

yiktúblu	He writes to him.	يَكْتُبُ لَهُ
yiktubláha	He writes to her.	يَكْتُبُ لَهَا
yiktubláhum	He writes to them.	يَكْتُبُ لَهُمْ
(etc.)		

(tikhtub)

tiktúblu	She writes to him.	تَكْتُبُ لَهُ
tiktubláha	She writes to her.	تَكْتُبُ لَهَا
(etc.)		

(aktub)

aktúblu
aktubláha
(etc.)

I write to him.
I write to her.

اكتب له
اكتب لها

(niktub)

niktúblu
niktubláha
(etc.)

We write to him.
We write to her.

نكتب له
نكتب لها

Modifications:

(1) When the verb ends in two consonants, an /a/ is placed before the suffix. The first /a/ in the four long suffixes is dropped; they become /-lha/, /-lhum/, /-lkum/ and /-lna/. * Note that stress also shifts.

(katabt)

katabtálu
katabtálha
katabtálhum

You (m) wrote to him;
I wrote to him.
You (m) wrote to her;
I wrote to her.
You (m) wrote to them;
I wrote to them.

كتبته
كتبتها
كتبتهم

katabtalak
katabtalik
katabtálkum

I wrote to you (m).
I wrote to you (f).
I wrote to you (p).

كتبتك
كتبتك
كتبلكم

katabtáli
katabtálna

You (m) wrote to me.
You (m) wrote to us.

كتبلي
كتبلنا

*There is a widely-used alternative form in which the suffix begins with /-all-/. This will be noted for your recognition only, not for learning. (It is more common in north Hijaz):

katabtállu
katabtállaha
katabtállahum

كتبلله
كتبلها
كتبهم

katabtállak
katabtállik
katabtállakum

كتبلك
كتبلك
كتبلكم

katabtállí
katabtállana

كتبلي
كتبلنا

(2) When a verb ends in a vowel, that vowel is lengthened and stressed:

Perfect

(katabu)*

kataboolu
kataboolaha
kataboolahum

They wrote to him.
They wrote to her.
They wrote to them.

كتبوا
كتبوا
كتبوا

kataboolak
kataboolik
kataboolakum

They wrote to you (m).
They wrote to you (f).
They wrote to you (p).

كتبوك
كتبوك
كتبوكم

katabooli	They wrote to me.	كُتِبَ لِي
kataboolana	They wrote to us.	كُتِبَ لَنَا

*Remember the rule about changing the vowel to /oo/ (rule 3, page 25.)

Imperfect

(yiktubu)

yiktubuulu	They write to him.	يَكْتُوبُ لَهُ
yiktubuulaha (etc.)	They write to her.	يَكْتُوبُ لَهَا

(tiktubi)

tiktubiilu	You (f) write to him.	تَكْتُبِينَ لَهُ
tiktubiilaha (etc.)	You (f) write to her.	تَكْتُبِينَ لَهَا

(tiktubu)

tiktubuulu	You (p) write to him.	تَكْتُوبُ لَهُ
tiktubuulaha (etc.)	You (p) write to her.	تَكْتُوبُ لَهَا

These processes are repetitive and become automatic with a little use; you will not have to give them active thought for long. When in doubt, use the basic forms; you will still be understood.

8. Verbs on the pattern of /gaal/, 'he said', appear to have only two consonants, although the long vowel in the middle covers another "root" consonant, a /w/ or /y/. Which consonant it is usually becomes evident in the imperfect tense. These verbs are "hollow" verbs, and there are three possible patterns:

A.	B.	C.
gaal yiguul 'say'	jaab yijiib 'bring'	naam yinaam 'sleep'
(root: g-w-l)	(root: j-y-b)	(root: n-w-m)

Type (A) has a short /u/ in some person forms; type (B) has short /i/, and type (C) may have /u/ or /i/. Type (C) is rare.

(A)	huwwa	gaal	yiguul	يقول	قال
	hiyya	gaalat	tiguul	تقول	قالت
	humma	gaalu	yiguulu	يقولوا	قالوا
	inta	gult	tiguul		قلت
	inti	gulti	tiguuli		قلت
	intu	gultu	tiguulu	أنا	قلنا
	ana	gult	aguul		قلت
	iHna	gulna	niguul		قلنا
(B)	huwwa	jaab	yijiib	يجيب	جاب
	hiyya	jaabat	tijiib	تجيب	جابت
	humma	jaabu	yijiibu	يجيبوا	جابوا
	inta	jibt	tijiib	تجيب	جبت
	inti	jibti	tijiibi	تجيب	جبت
	intu	jibtu	tijiibu	تجيبوا	جبنوا
	ana	jibt	ajiib	اجيب	جبت
	iHna	jibna	nijiib	نحجب	جبننا

(C)	huwwa	naam	yinaam	ينام	نام
	hiyya	naamat	tinaam	تنام	نامت
	humma	naamu	yinaamu	يناموا	ناموا
	inta	numt	tinaam	تنام	تمت
	inti	numti	tinaami	تنامي	تمت
	intu	numtu	tinaamu	تناموا	تمتوا
	ana	numt	anaam	انام	نمت
	iHna	numna	ninaam	ننام	نمتا

9. Hollow verbs shorten their long vowel before a suffix which begins with /l/ (the indirect object):

gaal + -li → galli He told me.

tiguul + -li → tigulli You (m) tell me.

10. Verbs like /asta'zan/, 'to take leave', and /asta9mal/, 'to use', are composed of a base verb with a prefix /-sta-/ which varies slightly, depending on the tense and person:

huwwa	asta'zan	yista'zin	يستأذن	استأذن
hiyya	asta'zanat	tista'zin	تستأذن	استأذنت
humma	asta'zanu	yista'zinu	يستأذنوا	استأذنوا
inta	asta'zant	tista'zin	تستأذن	استأذنت
inti	asta'zanti	tista'zini	تستأذنين	استأذنتن
intu	asta'zantu	tista'zinu	تستأذنوا	استأذنوا
ana	asta'zant	asta'zin	استأذن	استأذنت
iHna	asta'zanna	nista'zin	نستأذن	استأذنا
huwwa	asta9mal	(root: '-z-n) yista9mil		استعمل
hiyya	asta9malat	tista9mil		استعملت
	(etc.)	(root: 9-m-l)		

11. /beet/ means 'house', but in certain expressions is better translated into English as 'home':

al-beet the house
raaH al-beet He went to the house.
He went home.

fil-beet in the house
at home

12. Note that /raaH/, 'to go', is used with a direct object:

raaH al-beet. He went [to] the house.

Vocabulary Notes

Hollow verbs

gaal, yiguul (gult)

say

asta'zan, yista'zin
استأذن يستأذن

take leave, ask permission
قال يقول (قلت)

raaH, yiruuH (ruHt)

go

go

راح يروح (رحلت)

šaaf, yišuuft (šuft)

see

see

شاف يشوف (شفت)

kaan, yikuun (kunt)

be

asta9mal, yista9mil
استعمل يستعمل

كان يكون (كنت)

jaab, yijiib (jibt)

bring

bring

جاب يجيب (جبت)

naam, yinaam (numt)

sleep

sleep

نام ينام (نمت)

Masculine nouns

ahl أهـ family
 zawj زوج husband
 walad ولد son

Feminine nouns

9eela علة family
 zawja زوجة wife
 bint بنت daughter

Plural nouns

awlaad اولاد children*

*Another common word for
 'children' is /bazuura/.

Drills

1. Give the appropriate response to the cue sentence.

Example:

ahMad yisallim 9aleek. —→ allaah yisallimu . الله يسلمه احمد يسلم عليك.

Continue:

humma yisallimu 9aleek.
 zawji yisallim 9aleek.
 zawjati tisallim 9aleeki.
 awlaadi yisallimu 9aleekum.
 waladi yisallim 9aleek.

هم يسلموا عليك.
 زوجي يسلم عليك.
 زوجتي تسلم عليك.
 اولادي يسلموا عليكم.
 ولدي يسلم عليك.

2. I must be going now. laazim asta'zin al-Hiin.

لازم استأذن الحين.

Substitute:

we
 early
 I
 now
 they
 he

3. May I use your (m) book? mumkin asta9mil kitaabak? ممكن استعمل كتابك؟

Substitute:

this (m)
 the word
 we
 this (f)
 his book
 she
 I
 your (m) book

4. I went home.

ruHt al-beet.

رجعت البيت.

Substitute:

she
 to school
 they
 early
 we
 you (f)
 there
 he
 often ('much')
 home
 I

5. You (m) must go early. laazim tiruuH badri.

لازم ترجع بدري.

Substitute:

I
now
we
to school
he
they
there
you (f)
you (m)
early

6. I saw him at home. šuftu fil-beet.

شفتة في البيت

Substitute:

I saw her
she saw me
they saw me
we saw them
he saw him
you (m) saw them?
you (f) saw them?
you (f) saw him?
you (p) saw him?
I saw him

7. He brought his son. jaab waladu.

جاب ولده.

Substitute:

He brought his family.
He brought them.
I brought them.
Did you (f) bring them?
Did you (f) bring the children?
Did you (f) see the children?
Did they see the children?

8. He excused himself early. huwwa asta'zan badri.

هو استأذن بدري.

Substitute:

I
we
she
used the car
the pen
we
he

9. Translate the following sentences:

You (m) must see Ahmad.
You (m) must bring your son.
You (p) must bring your son.

We must see him often ('much').
They must go now.
I must bring my book.
I may bring my book.
I may say the word.
He may say the sentence.
He may sleep there.
He must be here.
You (m) must sleep now.
You (m) must see Ahmad.

Situations

1.
A. May I introduce my wife to you?
B. With pleasure. How do you do? (literally, 'Welcome')
C. (wife) I'm honored. Excuse me, what is your name?
B. Mr. Ahmad. When did you arrive here?
C. Yesterday.
A. We arrived from New York.
2.
A. Where are the children?
B. At home. My son went home early.
A. Does he speak Arabic?
B. A little. He studied it in school.
A. With your permission, I must leave now.
B. Go ahead.
3.
A. Did you greet him?
B. Yes, I greeted him. I know him well. And his family.
A. Where are they from?
B. From here. I know where their house is.
4.
A. What did you (p) do in school?
B. We wrote in Arabic. I wrote my name in English, too.
A. Is the school good?
B. Yes, it's good.
A. Can you close the door please?
B. OK.
A. Thanks.
B. You're welcome.

Cultural Notes

1. Arabs are extremely conscious of "manners" and "politeness" as they define these concepts. Among good manners is the attempt, even if merely in form, to have others precede you through a doorway. You, as an American, will seldom win--give in graciously and go first, but only after a token gesture of declining.
2. The act of "greeting" someone is also essential to good manners. It could be considered offensive if you forget to greet someone even in a large crowd, or in an office where you are visiting a co-worker, for example. Sometimes you see the casual "Goodby everybody" type of leave-taking, but just as often, people say goodbye to everyone individually before they leave, with a few polite phrases and a handshake.

3. The word /zawjati/, 'my wife', is not used as freely in Arabic as in English, especially when talking to another man. Instead, /al-9eela/, 'the family', or /al-jamaa9a/, 'the group', may be substituted. It is considered too direct for you to inquire about someone's wife; try "How is your family?" instead.

4. /wallah/, 'by God', is an example of an oath used for emphasis. Oaths are used frequently, and there are many varieties. You will recognize them because they begin with /wa-/, here translated as 'I swear by...', followed by a religious reference such as 'By God'.

LESSON 8

Dialogue

A. Muhammad!	ya muHammad!	يا محمد!
B. Yes?	na9am.	نعم.
I ask	as'al	اسأل
question	su'aal	سؤال
A. May I ask a question?	mumkin as'al su'aal?	ممکن اسأل سؤال؟
B. Go ahead.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل.
that (m)	hadaak	هذاك
man	rijjaal	رجال
A. Who is that man?	miin hadaak ar-rijjaal?	مين هذاك الرجال؟
not	ma	ما
I know	adri	ادري
not	muu	مو
B. I certainly don't know. He's not from here.	waḷlah ma adri. huwwa muu min hina.	ولله ما ادري. هو مو من هنا.
A. I don't know either.	ana kamaan ma adri.	انا كمان ما ادري.

Structure Sentences

1. I took the money.	axadt al-fuluus.	اخذت الفلوس.
2. Who is that lady?	miin hadiik as-sitt?	مين هديك الست؟
3. Where are those people from?	min feen haadolaak an-naas?	من فين هاولاك الناس؟
4. Where are your brothers?	feen axwaanak?	فين اخوانك؟
5. The boy asked about you (p).	al-walad sa'al 9annakum.	الولد سأل عنكم.
6. The boy asked about you (p).	al-walad sa'al 9aleekum.	الولد سأل عليكم.
7. They left.	miṣṣyu.	مشبوا.

Grammatical Notes

1. /na9am/ means 'yes' in Classical Arabic, and is often used to acknowledge being spoken to. If used as a question, /na9am?/, it means 'pardon, please repeat what you said'.

2. The three pronouns for 'that' are:

hadaak	that (m)	هـذاك
hadiik	that (f)	هـديك
hadolaak	that (p)	هـذولاك

They may be used alone; when used to modify a noun, the noun must be definite (this also applies to the words for 'this, these'). The pronoun may be used before or after the noun.

hadaak ar-rijjaal	that man
ar-rijjaal hadaak	that man
hadiik as-sitt	that lady

3. /muu/, 'not', and its variations are used to negate an equational sentence or a predicate. The full set of forms is:

huwwa	muu (mahu)	هو
hiyya	mahi	هي
humma	mahum	هم
inta	manta*	انت
inti	manti	نت
intu	mantu	نتو
ana	mana	نا
iHna	maHna	منا
huwwa muu min hina.	He is not from here.	
hiyya mahi	She is not American.	
amrikaniyya.		
haada muu mumkin.	This is not possible.	
haada muu laazim.	This is not necessary.	

*Alternative forms in common use in northern Hijaz are:

inta	mannak	مناك
inti	mannik	نك
intu	mannakum	مناكم
ana	manni	مني
iHna	manna	منا

/ma/ is used with verbs; it will be discussed further in Lesson 17.

4. /kamaan/ means 'also' in affirmative sentences, and 'either' in negative sentences (this is a problem of translation due to English structure; in Arabic, you simply say 'I don't know too'.)

5. /sa'al/ and /axad/ are examples of verbs which contain the glottal stop /'/' as a root consonant. You will note that /axad/ is slightly irregular in the imperfect tense (the /'/' is replaced by a vowel):

sa'al	سأل	yis'al	يسأل	(root: s-'-l)
axad	أخذ	yaaxud	ياخذ	(root: '-x-d)

6. /9an/, 'about, regarding', when suffixed with a pronoun, has the base form /9ann-/:

9annu	about him	عنه
9annaha	about her	عنها
9annahum	about them	عنهم
9annak	about you (m)	عنك
9annik	about you (f)	عنك
9annakum	about you (p)	عنكم
9anni	about me	عني
9annana	about us	عنا

7. Verbs like /diri/ and /miši/ which end in /-i/ have a special form for certain perfect suffixes:

huwwa	diri	درى	miši	مشى
hiyya	diryat	درت	mišyat	مشيت
humma	diryu	دروا	mišyu	مشوا
inta	diriit	دريت	mišiit	مشيت
inti	diriiti	دريني	mišiiti	مشيتي
intu	diriitu	درتوا	mišiitu	مشيتوا
ana	diriit	دريت	mišiit	مشيت
iHna	diriina	درينا	mišiina	مشينا

8. /sa'al/, 'to ask', may be used with /9an/ or /9ala/ (see Structure Sentences 5 and 6).

Vocabulary Notes

Nouns

rijjaal	man	رجال
sitt	lady, woman	ست
walad	boy, son	ولد
bint	girl, daughter	بنت
axx*	brother	أخ
uxt	sister	أخت
abb*	father	أب
umm	mother	أم
axwaan	brothers, brothers and sisters	إخوان
axwaat	sisters	إخوات

*The forms for 'brother' and 'father' are irregular when used with pronouns; the base forms become /axu-/ and /abu-/:

axuu	his brother	abuu	his father
axuuha	her brother	abuuha	her father
axuuhum	their brother	abuuhum	their father
axuuk	your (m) brother	abuuk	your (m) father
axuuki	your (f) brother	abuuki	your (f) father
axuukum	your (p) brother	abuukum	your (p) father
axuuya	my brother	abuuya	my father
axuuna	our brother	abuuna	our father

Verbs

diri, yidri (diriit)	know	درري يدري (درريت)
miši, yimši (mišiit)	go	منشي يمشي (مشيت)
axad, yaaxud	take	أخذ يأخذ
sa'al, yis'al	ask	سأل يسأل

Place Names

(Note that some place names in Arabic contain the definite article /al-/)

jidda	Jidda	جدة
ar-riyaaḍ	Riyadh	الرياض
makka	Mecca	مكة
al-madiina	Medina	المدينة
aṭ-ṭaayif	Taif	الطائف
tabuuk	Tabuk	تبوك
aḡ-ḡahraan	Dhahran	الظهران
ad-dammaam	Dammam	دمام
al-xobar	Al-Khobar	الخبر

Drills

1. May I ask a question? mumkin as'al su'aal? ممكن أسأل سؤال؟

Substitute:

huwwa	هو
iHna	أنا
axad haada	أخذ هادا
humma	هم
hiyya	هي
al-kitaab	الكتاب
al-kursi	الكرسي
hadaak	هذاك
ana	أنا
sa'al su'aal	سأل سؤال

2. Who is that man? miin hadaak ar-rijjaal? مين هذاك الرجال؟

Substitute:

sitt	ست
naas	ناس
bint	بنت
walad	ولد
haada	هادا
awlaad	اولاد
sitt	ست
rijjaal	رجال
hadaak	هذاك

3. He is not American huwwa muu amrikaani. هو مو امركاني.

Substitute:

here
she
French
my sister
Saudi
from Taif
he
from Medina
from Mecca
American

4. This is not possible. haada muu mumkin. هادا مو ممكن.

Substitute:

much
necessary
early
a sentence
my watch
my brothers and sisters
a school
my school
her pen
possible

5. I don't know where he is from. ma adri huwwa min feen. ما ادري هو من فين.

Substitute:

when she arrived
who they are
where the notebook is
how long he studied English
what her name is
who these belong to

6. Given the sentence in the affirmative, change it to negative:

inta min hina?
intu faahmiin?
hiyya almaniyya.
al-madrassa Haggat al-Hukuumaa.
haada laazim.
ahli fir-riyaaq.

انت من هنا؟
انتو فاهمين؟
هي المانية.
المدرسة حقة الحكومة.
هادا لازم.
اهلي في الرياض.

Situations

1.
 - A. This is my book.
 - B. Pardon me. It belongs to this girl. Your book isn't here.
 - A. Maybe Ahmad took it. He was here.
 - B. I don't know. I can ask him.
 - A. Please.
2.
 - A. Good morning.
 - B. Good morning. Welcome back.
 - A. Thanks.* How is your family?
 - B. Well, thank God. My brothers and sisters send their greetings.
 - A. Thanks.*

*These are, of course, not literal translations of the appropriate Arabic responses.

3.
 - A. Where is his brother from?
 - B. I don't know; not from here.
 - A. Maybe he's from Riyadh. What's his name?
 - B. Ahmad.
 - A. Where does he study now?
 - B. In a government school.

LESSON 9

Dialogue

- A. Hello. ahlan. اهلا .
- B. Hello. We've missed you. ahlan, waHaštana. اهلا . وحشتنا .
- more aktar اكثر
- health řiHHa صحة
- A. I've missed you, too. w inta aktar. keef وانت اكثر كيف صحتك؟
('you more') How is řiHHatak?
- conditions aHwaal احوال
- if God wills in řaa' allaah ان شاء الله
- B. Fine, and how are you (p)? Fine, I tayyib, wu keef aHwaalakum? طيب وكيف احوالك؟
hope? ('Fine, if řayyibiin, in řaa' allaah? صيبين ان شاء الله؟
God wills?')
- happy mabsuut مبسوط
- A. Fine, thanks. mabsuutiin, al-Hamdu مبسوطين الحمد لله .
lillaah.
- B. I must be going now. laazim asta'zin daHHiin. لازم استأذن رحين .
- you reach the tiřbaH تصبح
morning
- A. OK, good night. tiřbaH 9ala xeer. تصبح على خير .
('May you reach morning well')
- B. Good night. w inta min ahlu. وانت من اهله .
('And you are among those people')

Structure Sentences

1. This man is happy. haada r-rijjaal mabsuut. هادا الرجال مبسوط .
2. This girl is not happy. haadi l-bint mahi mabsuuta. هادي البنت مهي مبسوط .
3. These people are not happy. hadool an-naas mahum mabsuutiin. هداول الناس مهم مبسطين .
4. I am tired. ana ta9baan. انا تعبنا .
5. This woman is tired. haadi s-sitt ta9baana. هادي الست تعبانة .
6. We are tired. iHna ta9baaniin. احنا تعبانيين .
7. This woman is pretty. haadi s-sitt Hilwa. هادي الست حلوة .
8. These woman are pretty. hadool as-sittaat Hilwiin. هداول الستات حلوين .

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 9. This boy is big. | haada l-walad kabiir. | هادا الولد كبير. |
| 10. These boys are big. | hadooal al-awlaad kubaar. | هداول الاولاد كبار. |
| 11. The chairs are pretty. | al-karaasi Hilwa. | الكراسي حلوة. |
| 12. The chairs are pretty. | al-karaasi Hilwiin. | الكراسي حلوين. |

Grammatical Notes

1. The plural form of nouns cannot be predicted in Arabic. Some take as the plural suffix /-iin/ (the regular masculine plural, used for most males or mixed gender, especially professions), or /-aat/ (the regular feminine plural, for most females or inanimate nouns). But at least half have a "broken" plural, which consists of changed vowel patterns among the root consonants. These are hard to predict, and must be learned one by one as you come to them. Some examples, using nouns learned thus far:

<u>/-iin/ plural</u>	<u>/-aat/ plural</u>	<u>Broken plural</u>	
(no examples yet)	imtiHaan, imtiHaanaat lughaa, lughaat sitt, sittaat Hukuuma, Hukuumaat saa9a, saa9aat ṭarabiiza, ṭarabiizaat sayyaara, sayyaaraat (almost regular:) bint, banaat. kilma, kalimaat	امتحانات لغات ساعات حكومات ساعات طربيزات سيارات بنات كلمات	waraga, awraag jumla, jumal kitaab, kutub tamriin, tamaariin galam, aglaam daftar, dafaatir dars, duruus ma9had, ma9aahid madrasa, madaaris baab, abwaab ghurfa, ghuraf walad, awlaad rijjaal, rijjaal su'aal, as'ila Haal, aHwaal ism, asaami 9eela, 9awaayil
			اوراق جمل كتب تمارين اقدام دفاتر دروس معاهد مدارس ابواب غرف اولاد رجال اسئلة احوال اسامي عوائل

From now on, irregular noun plurals will be given with the singular form. Regular plurals will simply be marked as /-iin/ or /-aat/ after the singular form.

2. In Arabic, the adjective always matches the noun it modifies in gender and number (see examples in the Structure Sentences). Thus:

mabsuut	happy (m)	مبسوط
mabsuuta	(f)	مبسوطة
mabsuutiin	(p)	مبسوطين
ta9baan	tired (m)	تعبان
ta9baana	(f)	تعبانة
ta9baaniin	(p)	تعبانين
ṭayyib	good (m)	طيب
ṭayyiba	(f)	طيبة
ṭayyibiin	(p)	طيبين
maškuur	thanked (m)	مشكور
maškuura	(f)	مشكورة
maškuuriin	(p)	مشكورين

Note that if the adjective has the form CVCVC (single consonants and short vowels), it will lose the second vowel before the suffixes:

wiHiš	bad (m)	وحش
wiHša	(f)	وحشة
wiHšiin	(p)	وحشين

If the plural is an inanimate noun, the adjective may be used as plural or may be feminine singular (with /-a/) (see Structure Sentences 11 and 12). The latter use is considered "classicized" (see cultural note below.)

3. Most plural adjectives take the suffix /-iin/. Some, however, have a "broken" plural pattern. Broken adjective plurals are simpler than those of nouns; most of them have a predictable vowel form. If the singular pattern is:

$$C_1aC_2iiC_3$$

the plural pattern will be:

$$C_1uC_2aaC_3$$

kabiir, kubaar	big
ṣaḡhiir, ṣuḡhaar	small

4. /waHaštana/, 'We missed you', is a structure expressed exactly backwards from the English expression, literally, 'You (actor) caused-to-miss us (object). It is usually used in the perfect tense, although it may be translated past or present in English.

Examples:

waHaštuuni	I missed you (p).	وحشتوني
waHaštuuna	We missed you (p).	وحشتونا
waHaštiini	I missed you (f).	وحشتيني
waHašoona	We missed them.	وحشونا
waHašatni	I miss her.	وحشتني
waHašni	I miss him.	وحشني

Vocabulary Notes

Adjectives

Broken plurals

kabiir, kubaar	big	كبير كبار
ṣaḡhiir, ṣuḡhaar	small	صغير صغار
jadiid, judud	new	جديد جدد
gadiim, gudum	old	قديم قديم
ṭawiil, ṭuwaal	tall	طويل طوال
ḡaṣiir, ḡuṣaar	short	قصير قصار
tagiil, tugaal	heavy	ثقل ثقال
xafiif, xufaaf	lightweight	خفيف خفاف
laṭiif, luṭaaf	nice, pleasant	لطيف لطائف

Regular plurals

ṭayyib, -iin	good	طيب -ين
wiHiš, -iin	bad, ugly	وحش -ين
muhimm, -iin	important	مهم -ين
Hilu, -wiin	pretty	حلو -ين

Drills

1. We missed you (m). waHaštana. وحشتنا.

Substitute:

We missed her.
 We missed him.
 We missed them.
 I missed them.
 I missed you (m).
 I missed you (f).
 We missed you (f).
 We missed you (m).

2. How is your (m) health? keef šihHatak? كيف صحتك؟

Continue:

(to a woman)
 (to a group)

3. Good night. tišbaH 9ala xeer. تصبح على خير.

Continue:

(to a woman)
 (to a group)

4. Good night (response). w inta min ahlu. وانت من اهله.

Continue:

(to a woman)
 (to a group)

5. Given the sentence in the singular, change it to plural:

al-bint Hilwa.
 as-su'aal muhimm.
 as-sayyaara jadiida.
 al-kitaab tagiil.
 al-walad mabsuut.
 haada xafiif.

البنات حلوة.
 السؤال مهم.
 السيارة جديدة.
 الكتاب ثقيل.
 الولد مبسوط.
 هادا خفيف.

6. This man is happy. haada r-rijjaal mabsuut. هادا الرجال مبسوط.

Substitute:

as-sitt
 as-sittaat
 ta9baan
 al-walad
 aHmad
 kabiir
 humma
 šaghiir
 uxti
 iHna
 inta
 huwwa
 mabsuut
 inti
 tawiil

الست
 الستات
 تعبان
 الولد
 احمد
 كبير
 هم
 صغير
 اختي
 احنا
 انت
 هو
 مبسوط
 انت
 طويل

intu
gaṣiir
hiyya
laṭiif
ar-rijjaal
mabsuut

انتو
قصير
هي
لطيف
الرجال
مبسوط

7. The chairs are pretty. al-karaasi Hilwiin.

الكراسي حلوة

Substitute:

kursi
xafiif
kutub
kitaab
muhiim
as-su'aal
kwayyis
as-saa9a
wiHiṣ
al-ghurfa
Hilu
al-aglaam
hadoo1
jadiid
al-karaasi
Hilu

كرسي
خفيف
كتب
كتاب
مهم
السؤال
كويس
الساعة
وحش
الغرفة
حلو
الأفلام
هدول
جديد
الكراسي
حلو

Situations

1.
 - A. Have you seen your brother?
 - B. No, I miss him very much.
 - A. Where is he now?
 - B. He is in the government.
 - A. You have to introduce him to me.
 - B. I will. (literally, 'if God wills')
2.
 - A. Good evening.
 - B. Good evening.
 - A. Can you tell me, who are these people?
 - B. I don't know. I can ask my father; he knows them.
 - A. Please. Thank you. ('You are thanked')
 - B. You're welcome.
3.
 - A. Is this book good?
 - B. No, it's very bad. It's old.
 - A. Who wrote it?
 - B. We don't know.
 - A. Well, I must be going. Good night.
 - B. Good night.

Cultural Notes

1. There are many situations in which Classical Arabic structures may be used in speaking colloquial Arabic. Usually such "classicisms" have a colloquial equivalent, but are used for emphasis or eloquence. Whenever a classicism appears in this course, it will be noted as such.
2. /in ṣaa' allaah/, 'if God wills', is always used when referring to a future action. It may have numerous translations in English, depending on the situation.

LESSON 10

Review all dialogues.

Supplementary Drills

1. Can you tell me, when did you arrive? mumkin tigulli, mita waṣalt? ممكن تقوللي متى وصلت؟

Substitute:

How is he?
What is this word in Arabic?
Can I introduce you to Mr. Jones?
What is her name?
Where are your brothers and sisters?
Does he understand English?
Where is your book?
Whom did you see there?
With whom did he go?

2. May I be excused? mumkin asta'zin? ممكن استأذن؟

Substitute:

use this pen?
speak English?
open the car?
do that?
write the questions?
take the small chair?
see your car?

3. I asked about him. sa'alt 9annu. سألت عنه .

Substitute:

greeted the woman.
told him.
asked your father.
talked to them.
went to Riyadh.
arrived early.

(Repeat, using 'he', 'she', 'you (p)', 'we'.)

4. Answer the questions:

eeṣ ismak?
inta min feen?
mita waṣalt hina?
inta ingiliizi?
inta titkallam 9arabi?
feen darast?
madrasatak Haggat al-Hukuuma?
fataHt kitaabak?
'Notebook' eeṣ ismu bil-9arabi?
haada galamak?
inta ta9baan ṣwayya?

ايش اسمك؟
انت من فين؟
متى وصلت هنا؟
انت انكليزي؟
انت تتكلم عربي؟
فين درست؟
مدرستك حقة الحكومة؟
فتحت كتابك؟
"نوتبوك" ايش اسمه بالعربي؟
هاذا قلمك؟
انت تعبان شويه؟

LESSON 11

Dialogue

(In an office)

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| you (honorific) | Haḍratak | حضرتك |
| A. Who are you? | miin Haḍratak? | مين حضرتك؟ |
| B. My name is Abdel-Rahman. | ismi 9abd ar-raḥmaan. | اسمي عبد الرحمن. |
| you (m) work | tiṣtaghil | تشتغل |
| A. Where do you work? | feen tiṣtaghil? | فين تشتغل؟ |
| ministry | wizaara | وزارة |
| external | xaarijiyya | خارجية |
| B. In the Foreign Ministry. | fi wizaarat al-xaarijiyya. | في وزارة الخارجية. |
| A. Are you Saudi? | inta su9uudi? | انت سعودي؟ |
| of course | ṭab9an | طبعاً |
| B. Yes, of course. I'm from here, from Jidda. | iiwa ṭab9an. ana min hina, min jidda. | ايوه طبعاً. انا من هنا، من جدة. |
| A. Welcome. | ahlan wu saḥlan. | اهلاً وسهلاً. |
| B. Thank you. | ahlan biik. | اهلاً بـبك. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. In which ministry does he work? | yiṣtaghil fi ayy wizaara? | يشغل في اي وزارة؟ |
| 2. In which school do you study? | tidrus fi ayy madrasa? | تدرس في اي مدرسة؟ |
| 3. Bring any book. | jiib ayy kitaab. | جيب اي كتاب. |
| 4. He is from Jidda. | huwwa jiddaawi. | هو جداوي. |
| 5. Where is Mecca Road? | feen ṭariiq makka? | فين طريق مكة؟ |
| 6. The American government is big. | Hukuumat amriika kabiira. | حكومة امريكا كبيرة. |
| 7. The Philips company is important. | Ṣarikat filibs muhimma. | شركة فليبس مهمة. |

Grammatical Notes

1. /Haḍratak/ (/Haḍratik/), literally, 'your presence', may be used as an honorific title, substituting for /inta/ or /inti/. It is often used with persons older than yourself or of high rank. You will also hear /ṭaal 9umrak/ (/ṭaal 9umrik/), literally, 'May your life be lengthened', especially in the Najd, and for royalty.

For older people, /ya 9ammi/, 'my uncle', and /ya xaalati/, 'my aunt', are commonly heard as well. An older or respected man may be addressed as /ya šeex/, 'sheikh', and it need not imply that this is an official title.

2. /aštaghal, yištaghil/, 'to work', is the most common word, but /9amal, yi9mil/ is often heard to mean 'to work, to do' (it is more classicized).

3. /ayy/, 'which', is used before a noun. It is not declined. In a question, it means 'which?', and in a statement it means 'any'.

4. /jiddaawi/ is another adjective of the /-i/ type. For a noun which ends in a vowel, /-aawi/ is suffixed to make an adjective. This pattern is used especially often for adjectives of place origin, though it is by no means limited to them. (Not all place names can be made adjectives; you say /min/ + place.)

Most of these adjectives take the /-yiin/ plural suffix (but do not generalize without seeing it first; some nationality adjectives are irregular). The feminine form is always predictable, /-yya/.

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u> (regular)		
su9uudi	سعودي	-yiin		Saudi
najdi	نجدي	-yiin		Najdi
Hijaazi	حجازي	-yiin		Hijazi
yamaani	يمني	-yiin		Yemeni
faransaawi	فرنساوي	-yiin		French
iṭaali	إيطالي	-yiin		Italian
amriiki	أمريكي	-yiin		American
yabaani	ياباني	-yiin		Japanese
		(irregular)		
badawi	بدوي	badu	بدو	Bedouin
9arabi	عربي	9arab	عرب	Arab
amrikaani	أمريكاني	amrikaan	أمريكان	American
turki	تركي	atraak	اتراك	Turk
asbaani	اسباني	asbaan	اسبان	Spanish
almaani	المان	almaan	المان	German
ingiliizi	انكليزي	ingiliiz	انكليز	English
ruusi	روسي	ruus	روس	Russian
ajnabi	اجنبي	ajaanib	اجانب	foreign

5. Structures like /wizaarat al-xaarijiyya/ and /Hukuumat amriika/ are examples of nouns placed in a "construct". A construct consists of two or more nouns placed together, to express possession (or 'of' in English):

wizaara	ministry
wizaarat al-xaarijiyya	Ministry of External [Affairs] (literally, 'ministry the-external')
Hukuuma	government
Hukuumat amriika	the government of America (literally, 'government America')
ism ar-rijjaal	the man's name

More than two nouns may be placed in a construct:

ṭariiq wizaarat al-xaarijiyya	road of the Foreign Ministry (literally, 'road ministry the-external')
----------------------------------	---

Note that feminine nouns which end in /-a/ replace this suffix with /-at/ when part of a construct.

The entire construct phrase is either definite ('the') or indefinite ('a, an') depending on the last noun:

ism ar-rijjaal the man's name

ism rijjaal a man's name

The first and middle nouns cannot be marked as definite (with /al-/), but they are usually translated definite:

ṭariig al-wizaara the road of the ministry

Proper nouns (names) and nouns which have a possessive ending are grammatically definite, so they occur only as the last item of a construct:

sayyaarat aHmad Ahmad's car

sayyaarat axuuya my brother's car

ṭariig makka Mecca Road

Other examples of constructs:

haada maktab ṣarika. This is a company's office.

haada maktab aṣ-ṣarika. This is the company's office.

haadi gunṣuliyyat
safaara. This is an embassy's consulate.

haadi gunṣuliyyat
as-safaara. This is the embassy's consulate.

As a review, remember that there is an important structural difference between "constructs" and noun phrases (nouns + adjectives):

Hukumat amrika the government of America

al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya the American government
(literally, 'the government the American')

ṣarika amrikiyya an American company
(literally, 'company American')

The constructs are patterned:

indefinite Noun + definite Noun
indefinite Noun + indefinite Noun

whereas the noun phrases are patterned:

definite Noun + definite Adjective
indefinite Noun + indefinite Adjective

Other examples:

Constructs:

maḍiinat jidda the city of Jidda

ṭariig al-maṭaar Airport Road

ṣarikat an-nuur the light company

Noun Phrases:

as-safaara l-amrikiyya	the American Embassy
al-madrassa l-amrikiyya	the American school
al-jeeš as-su9uudi	the Saudi army

Vocabulary Notes

Nouns

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>		
safaara	-aat	embassy	سفارة -ات
wizaara	-aat	ministry	وزارة -ات
šarika	-aat	company	شركة -ات
madiina	mudun	city	مدينة مدن
maṭaar	-aat	airport	مطار -ات
ṭariig	ṭurug	road	طريق طرق
gunṣuliyya	-aat	consulate	قنصلية -ات
maktab	makaatib	office	مكتب مكاتب

Verbs

aštagħal, yištagħil	work	اشتغل يشتغل
9amal, yi9mil	work, do	عمل يعمل

Names of Countries

amriika	America	أمريكا
almaanya	Germany	ألمانيا
ingiltera	England	إنجلترا
faraansa	France	فرنسا
asbaanya	Spain	إسبانيا
ruusya	Russia	روسيا
al-yabaan	Japan	اليابان

The ministries in Saudi Arabia are:

wizaarat al-xaarijiyya	Foreign Ministry
wizaarat ad-daaxiliyya	Interior Ministry
wizaarat al-ma9aarif	Ministry of Education (literally, 'knowledge')
wizaarat at-tijaara	Ministry of Commerce and Industry
w aš-šinaa9a	
wizaarat al-muwaasalaat	Ministry of Communications
wizaarat ad-difaa9	Ministry of Defense and Aviation
w aṭ-ṭayaraan	
wizaarat al-i9laam	Ministry of Information
wizaarat az-ziraa9a	Ministry of Agriculture
wizaarat al-maaliyya	Ministry of Finance
wizaarat al-9amal w aš-šu'uun	Ministry of Labor and Social Affairs
al-ijtimaa9iyya	
wizaarat al-batroot	Ministry of Petroleum and Minerals
w al-ma9aadin	
wizaarat al-9adl	Ministry of Justice
wizaarat al-Hajj	Ministry of Pilgrimage
w al-awgaaf	and Endowments

In ordinary conversation, ministries with double names are usually referred to by the first title only.

Drills

1.
A. In which ministry do you work? tiṣtaghil fi ayy wizaara? تشتغل في اي وزارة؟
B. In the Foreign Ministry. fi wizaarat al-xaarijiyya. في وزارة الخارجية.

Continue:

in the Ministry of Interior
in the Ministry of Defense
in the Ministry of Education
in the Ministry of Communications
in the Ministry of Finance
in the Ministry of Commerce
in the Ministry of Labor
in the Ministry of Information
in the Ministry of Agriculture

2.
A. Where is he from? huwwa min feen? هو من فين؟
B. He's from the city of Jidda. huwwa min madiinat jidda. هو من مدينة جدة.

Continue:

from Taif
from the city of Riyadh
from Mecca
from the city of New York
from Medina
from Dhahran
from the city of Chicago
from Tobuk
from Dammam
from Jidda

3. I am from Jidda. ana min jidda. انا من جدة.

Substitute:

Germany
England
America
Spain
Russia
Japan
France

4. Given the name of the country, respond with the nationality.

Example: humma min amriika. → humma amrikaan. هم من امريكا ← هم امركان.

Continue:

humma min almaanya.
humma min ruusya.
humma min faraansa.
humma min asbaanya.
humma min al-yabaan.
humma min ingiltera.
humma min amriika.

هم من ألمانيا.
هم من روسيا.
هم من فرنسا.
هم من اسبانيا.
هم من اليابان.
هم من انكلترا.
هم من امريكا.

5. They work in the school. humma yiṣṭaghilu fil-madrasa. هم يشتغلوا في المدرسة.

Substitute:

an office
the light company
the airport
the Ministry of Interior
the communications office
an American company
the German embassy
Raytheon company
in Riyadh
the American consulate

6. I saw a tall man there. šuft rijjaal ṭawiil hinaak. شفت رجال طويل هناك.

Substitute:

a pretty chair
a big table
those pens
new books
important people
the Foreign Ministry
a good road
the old embassy
[some] foreigners
[some] Italians
[some] Bedouins

7. Given the statement in the indefinite, change it to definite:

9amal fi šarika amrikiyya. عمل في شركة أمريكية.
haadi sayyaarat wizaara. هادي سيارة وزارة.
hadooḥ tamaariin dars هادول تمارين درسين.
darast fi maḡhad kabiir. درست في معهد كبير.
haadi safaarat Hukuuma. هادي سفارة حكومة.

8. Given the sentence in the singular, change it to plural:

al-wizaara kabiira. الوزارة كبيرة.
al-maṭaar jadiid. المطار جديد.
al-kitaab wiḥiṣ. الكتاب وحين.
as-sitt qaṣiira. الست قصيرة.
al-imtiḥaan ṭayyib. الامتحان طيب.
aṭ-ṭarabiiza ṣaḡhiira. الطرييزة صغيرة.
al-bint mabsuūṭa. البنت مبسوطة.
as-sayyaara gadiima. السيارة قديمة.

Situations

1.
 - A. Can you (honorific) tell me, where is the Ministry of Education?
 - B. That's not here in Jidda. It's in Riyadh.
 - A. I understand, thank you.
 - B. You're welcome.

2.

- A. There are many foreigners here.
B. Yes, they work in companies.
A. Are there French here?
B. Yes, of course. There is a French Embassy.
A. I saw Germans too.
B. Yes. You see many people in Jidda.

3.

- A. Come in. When did you (p) arrive?
B. Yesterday. We arrived at the airport in the evening.
A. Welcome back.
B. Thanks. Where is your father?
A. He went to the office.
B. I hope to see him there. (literally, 'If God wills, I [will] see him there.')
A. I hope so. (literally, 'If God wills.')

LESSON 12

Dialogue

- | | | |
|---|--|----------------------------------|
| hour | saa9a | ساعة |
| how many | kam | كم |
| A. Please, what time is it? | min faqlak, as-saa9a kam? | من فضلك الساعة كم؟ |
| three | talaata | ثلاثة |
| B. It's three o'clock. | as-saa9a talaata. | الساعة ثلاثة. |
| I was late | at'axxart | اتأخرت |
| very | marra | مرة |
| A. I'm very late. | ana marra at'axxart. | انا مرة متأخرت. |
| but | laakin | لاكن |
| still | lissa9 | لسم |
| early | badri | بدري |
| B. A little. But it's still early. Go safely. | swayya. laakin lissa9 badri. ma9a s-salaama. | شويه. لاكم نسع. بدري مع السلامة. |
| safety | amaan | امان |
| A. In the safety of God. | fi amaan illaah. | في امان الله. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. It's four-thirty. | as-saa9a arba9a wu nuşş. | الساعة أربعة ونس. |
| 2. It's 1:15. | as-saa9a waHda wu rub9. | الساعة واحدة ورب. |
| 3. It's 7:45 ('eight minus a quarter') | as-saa9a tamanya illa rub9. | الساعة ثمانية الا ربع. |
| 4. I have to meet Ahmad. | laazim agaabil aHmad. | لازم اقابل احمد. |
| 5. He's very nice. | huwwa marra laṭiif. | هو مرة لطيف. |
| 6. We are very happy. | iHna marra mabsuuṭiin. | احنا مرة مبسوطين. |
| 7. She is very tall. | hiyya ṭawiila jiddan. | هي طويلة جدا. |
| 8. I have to count them. | laazim a9iddahum. | لازم اعدهم. |
| 9. He is still here. | huwwa lissa9 hina. | هو لسم هنا. |
| 10. What are you doing now? | eeṣ tisawwi daHHiin? | ايش تسوي رحين؟ |
| 11. I answered him. | raddeet 9alee. | رديت عليه. |

Grammatical Notes

1. Numbers one through twelve are:

waaHid (feminine, waHda)	one	واحد (واحدة)
itneen	two	اثنين
talaata	three	ثلاثة
arba9a	four	اربعة
xamsa	five	خمسة
sitta	six	ستة
sab9a	seven	سبعة
tamanya	eight	ثمانية
tis9a	nine	تسعة
9ašara	ten	عشرة
iHqa9š	eleven	إحدى عشر
itna9š	twelve	اثنت عشر

2. Expressions for telling time are:

as-saa9a arba9a.	It's four o'clock.
as-saa9a sab9a.	It's seven o'clock.
as-saa9a arba9a wu nušš.	It's 4:30. ('four and a half')
as-saa9a arba9a wu rub9.	It's 4:15. ('four and a quarter')
as-saa9a arba9a illa rub9.	It's 3:45. (four minus a quarter')

Note that the feminine form /waHda/ is used to modify /saa9a/.

The expressions for 'a.m.' and 'p.m.' are:

aš-šubuH	a.m.
al-masa	p.m.
as-saa9a talaata š-šubuH.	It's 3:00 a.m.
as-saa9a xamsa l-masa.	It's 5:00 p.m.

Without the time phrase, the expressions are:

fiš-subuH	in the morning
fiš-masa	in the evening

3. /marra/ is used before an adjective or verb to mean 'very'. 'Very' may also be expressed with the phrase /bil-marra/ (after the adjective) or /jiddan/ (after the adjective). /jiddan/ is classical, and the most emphatic. (cf. Structure Sentences 5, 6, and 7.)

4. /liſsa9/ has several uses in Arabic. When used before a predicate (other than a verb), it means 'still':

huwwa liſsa9 walad šaghiir.	He is still a small boy.
al-kitaab liſsa9 jadiid.	The book is still new.

(Other uses of this word will be discussed in Lesson 26.)

5. /sawwa, yisawwi/, 'to make, to do', is an example of a verb which ends in a vowel. This type of verb, as well as verbs in which the last consonant is "doubled", have different suffixes in the perfect tense (similar to those we saw for /diri/ and /miš(i)/):

Perfect
(ends in /-a/)

Imperfect

huwwa sawwa
hiyya sawwat
humma sawwu

yisawwi
tisawwi
yisawwu

يسوّى
تسوّى
يسوّوا

سوّى
سوّت
سوّوا

inta sawweet
inti sawweeti
intu sawweetu

tisawwi
tisawwi
tisawwu

تسوّى
تسوّى
تسوّوا

سوّيت
سوّيت
سوّيتوا

ana sawweet
iHna sawweena

asawwi
nisawwi

اسوّى
نسوّى

سوّيت
سوّينا

(doubled)

huwwa Habb
hiyya Habbat
humma Habbu

yiHubb
tiHubb
yiHubbu

يحب
تحب
يحبوا

حب
حبت
حبوا

inta Habbeet
inti Habbeeti
intu Habbeetu

tiHubb
tiHubbi
tiHubbu

تحب
تحب
تحبوا

حببت
حببت
حببتوا

ana Habbeet
iHna Habbeena

aHubb
niHubb

احب
نحب

حببت
حببنا

Doubled verbs (like /Habb/, /9add/) may have either the vowel /u/ or /i/ in the imperfect:

Habb, yiHubb
9add, yi9idd

6. /gaabal/, yigaabil/, 'to meet', is an example of a verb which contains a long /aa/:

Perfect

Imperfect

huwwa gaabal
hiyya gaabalat
humma gaabalu

yigaabil
tigaabil
yigaabilu

يقابل
تقابل
يقابلوا

قابل
قابلت
قابلوا

inta gaabalt
inti gaabalti
intu gaabaltu

tigaabil
tigaabili
tigaabilu

تقابل
تقابل
تقابلوا

قابلت
قابلت
قابلتوا

ana gaabalt
iHna gaabalna

agaabil
nigaabil

اقابل
نقابل

تابلت
قابلنا

7. /radd/, 'to answer', is used with the preposition /9ala/, 'on', before the object:

raddeet 9alee

I answered him.
(literally, 'I answered on him.')

laazim nirudd 9aleeha. We must answer her.

8. You have now had all of the major types of verbs.

Summary of Verb Conjugations

(1) Regular (a)

daras	yidrus	jibt	tijiib
darasat	tidrus	jibti	tijiibi
darasu	yidrusu	jibtu	tijiibu
darast	tidrus	jibt	ajiib
darasti	tidrusi	jibna	nijiib
darastu	tidrusu		
darast	adrus	naam	yinaam
darasna	nidrus	naamat	tinaam
		naamu	yinaamu

(2) Regular (i)

9irif	yi9rif	numt	tinaam
9irifat	ti9rif	numti	tinaami
9irifu	yi9rifu	numtu	tinaamu
9irift	ti9rif	numt	anaam
9irifti	ti9rifi	numna	ninaam
9iriftu	ti9rifu		
9irift	a9rif		
9irifna	ni9rif		

(3) Weak Initial Consonant

axad	yaaxud
axat	taaxud
axlu	yaaxudu*
axadt	taaxud
axadti	taaxudi*
axadtu	taaxudu*
axadt	aaxud
axadna	naaxud

*These forms are often shortened to /yaaxdu, taaxdi, taaxdu/.

(4) Weak Medial Consonant ("Hollow")

gaal	yiguul
gaalat	tiguul
gaalu	yiguulu
gult	tiguul
gulti	tiguuli
gultu	tiguulu
gult	aguul
gulna	niguul
jaab	yijiib
jaabat	tijiib
jaabu	yijiibu

(5) Weak Final Consonant (i)

miši	yimši
mišyat	timši
mišyu	yimšu
mišiit	timši
mišiiti	timši
mišiitu	timšu
mišiit	amši
mišiina	nimši

(6) Weak Final Consonant (a)

sawwa	yisawwi
sawwat	tisawwi
sawwu	yisawwu
sawweet	tisawwi
sawweeti	tisawwi
sawweetu	tisawwu

(7) Final Consonant Doubled

Habb	yiHubb
Habbat	tiHubb
Habbu	yiHubbu
Habbeet	tiHubb
Habbeeti	tiHubbi
Habbeetu	tiHubbu
Habbeet	aHubb
Habbeena	niHubb

9add	yi9idd	(9) <u>Contain /aa/</u>		
9addat	ti9idd			
9addu	yi9iddu		gaabal	yigaabil
			gaabalat	tigaabil
9addeet	ti9idd		gaabalu	yigaabilu*
9addeeti	ti9iddi			
9addeetu	ti9iddu		gaabalt	tigaabil
			gaabalti	tigaabili*
9addeet	a9idd		gaabaltu	tigaabilu*
9addeena	ni9idd			
(8) <u>Medial Consonant Doubled</u>			gaabalt	agaabil
			gaabalna	nigaabil
9arrafa	yi9arrif	These forms are often shortened to /yigaablu, tigaabli, tigaablu/.		
9arrafat	ti9arrif			
9arrafu	yi9arrifu			
		(10) <u>Contain /-sta-/</u>		
9arraft	ti9arrif		asta'zan	yista'zin
9arrafti	ti9arrifi		asta'zanat	tista'zin
9arraftu	ti9arrifu		asta'zanu	yista'zinu
9arraft	a9arrif		asta'zant	tista'zin
9arrafa	ni9arrif		asta'zanti	tista'zini
			asta'zantu	tista'zinu
			asta'zant	asta'zin
			asta'zanna	nista'zin

Vocabulary Notes

Verbs

(hollow)		
saab, yisiib (sibt)	leave behind	ساب يسيب (سبت)
šaal, yišiiil (šilt)	carry	شال يشيل (شلت)
(ending in /i/)		
nisi, yinsa (nisiit)	forget	نسي ينسى (نسيت)
(ending in /a/)		
sawwa, yisawwi (sawweet)	do	سووى يسووى (سوويت)
(doubled)		
Habb, yiHubb (Habbeet)	like, love	حب يحب (حبيت)
radd, yirudd (raddeet)	answer	رد يرد (رديت)
Haṭṭ, yiHuṭṭ (Haṭṭeet)	put	حط يحط (حطيت)
9add, yi9idd (9addeet)	count	عد يعد (عديت)
<u>/aa/</u>		
gaabal, yigaabil	meet	قابل يقابل
(Other)		
at'axxar, yit'axxir	be late	اتأخر يتأخر

Drills

1. One plus three
equals four.

waaHid zaayid talaata
yisaawi* arba9a.

واحد زائد ثلاثة يساوي
اربعة.

Continue:

2 + 4	8 + 3	5 + 2
5 + 3	7 + 2	6 + 6
3 + 3	2 + 3	7 + 1

*Note the difference between /yisaawi/, 'equals' and /yisawwi/, 'he does'.

2. Three minus one
equals two.

talaata naagiş waaHid
yisaawi itneen.

ثلاثة ناقص واحد يساوي
اثنين.

Continue:

4 - 1	10 - 2	12 - 8
6 - 2	11 - 6	9 - 2
9 - 4	8 - 1	11 - 3

3. It's three o'clock.

as-saa9a talaata.

الساعة ثلاثة.

Substitute:

5:30	7:30	3:45
8:00	6:00	9:00
2:15	12:00	8:45
1:45	11:15	

4. I am very late.

ana marra at'axxart.

انا مرة اتأخرت.

Substitute:

huwwa
iHna
hiyya
humma
al-awlaad
ana

هو
احنا
هي
هم
الأولاد
انا

5. This is very pretty.

haada Hilu jiddan.

هادا حلو جدا.

Substitute:

muhimm
an-naas
al-kitaab
aš-šarika
gadiim
al-madiina
haada l-baab
aṭ-ṭarabiiza
xafiif
Hilu
haada

مهم
الناس
الكتاب
الشركة
قديم
المدينة
هادا الباب
الطريزة
خفيف
حلو
هادا

6. He is still here.

huwwa lissa9 hina.

هو لسه هنا.

Substitute:

important
new
she
we
tired
very tired
you (m)
small (young)
the young lady ('miss')
the company
new
car
bad
he
here

7. What did you (m) do?

ees sawweet?

ايش سويت؟

Substitute:

you (f)
she
forget
he
we
like
you (p)
they
put here
he
you (p)
she
answer
you (m)
they
when
leave
she
we
you (p)
he
they

8. He carried the boy.

saal al-walad.

شال الولد.

Substitute:

I
she
we
the books
you (m)
forgot
you (p)
he
left
they
you (f)
the watch

she
liked
I
they

9. What are you (m) doing? eeṣ tisawwi?

ايشر نسوي؟

Substitute:

you (p)
she
he
you (f)
they
you (m)

Situations

1.
 - A. He went late.
 - B. I know. That's not good.
 - A. He arrived at 3:30, very late.
 - B. What time is it now?
 - A. 3:45.
 - B. Is your watch new?
 - A. Yes, and it's good, too.
2.
 - A. Excuse me, may I ask a question?
 - B. Of course, go ahead.
 - A. Where is the American Embassy?
 - B. You have to go from Medina Road.
3.
 - A. This car is brand new, right?
 - B. Yes. It's my brother's car.
 - A. It's very pretty.
 - B. Thanks.
 - A. I've missed your brother.
 - B. He has missed you, too. He sends you his greetings.

Cultural Notes

1. Arabs generally have a more flexible attitude about time than Americans do. While they do make appointments and attempt to keep them, frequently apologizing for being late, there is also a longer period of time within which a person may arrive late before the other person loses patience. Sometimes appointments are made for an "approximate" time; in this case, you may expect someone to come as much as an hour late.

LESSON 13

Dialogue

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| you came | jiit | جيت |
| kingdom | mamlaka | مملكة |
| A. When did you come to the kingdom? | mita jiit al-mamlaka? | متا جيت المملكة؟ |
| day | yoom | يوم |
| days | ayyaam | ايام |
| B. Monday. Three days ago. | yoom al-itneen. gabl talaata ayyaam. | يوم الاثنين. قبل ثلاثة ايام. |
| house | beet | بيت |
| A. Where is your house? | feen beetak? | فين بيتك؟ |
| living | saakin | ساكن |
| street | saari9 | شارع |
| fourteen | arba9ta9\$ | اربعتمش |
| B. I live on 14th Street. | ana saakin fi saari9 arba9ta9\$. | انا ساكن في شارع اربعتمش. |
| far | ba9iid | بعيد |
| A. Is it far from here? | ba9iid min hina? | بعيد من هنا؟ |
| near | gariib | قريب |
| B. No, it's near here. | la', gariib min hina. | لا. قريب من هنا. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. We came a long time ago. ('from a long time') | jiina min zamaan. | جيننا من زمان. |
| 2. They live on Gabil Street. | humma saakniin fi saari9 gaabil. | هم ساكنين في شارع قابل. |
| 3. Have you (m) been in Jidda long? ('For you much in Jidda?') | lak katiir fi jidda? | لك كثير في جدة؟ |
| 4. I have been here five days. ('For me here five days') | liyya hina xamsa ayyaam. | لي هنا خمسة ايام. |
| 5. She lives near our house. | hiyya saakna gariib min beetana. | هي ساكنة قريب من بيتنا. |

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 6. She lives far from our house. | hiyya saakna ba9iid 9an beetana. | هي ساكنة بعيد عن بيتنا |
| 7. I took 1,000 dollars from my father. | ana axadt alf dulaar min abuuaya. | انا اخذت الف دولار من ابوتي |
| 8. What is your (m) address? | ee9 9inwaanak? | ايشر عنوانك؟ |

Grammatical Notes

1. /jaa/, 'to come', is an irregular verb:

PerfectImperfect

huwwa jaa
hiyya jaat
humma joo

yiji
tiji
yiju

يجي
تجي
يجوا

جا
جات
جوا

inta jiit
inti jiiti
intu jiitu

tiji
tiji
tiju

تجي
تجي
تجوا

جيت
جيت
جيتوا

ana jiit
iHna jiina

aji
niji

اجي
نجي

جيت
جينا

2. The full name of the country is /al-mamlaka l-9arabiiyya s-su9uudiiyya/, 'the Saudi Arabian Kingdom'. Abbreviations are often used, /al-mamlaka/ or /as-su9uudiiyya/.

3. Days of the week are:

as-sabt
al-aHad
al-itneen
at-taluut
ar-rabuu9
al-xamiis
al-jum9a

Saturday
Sunday
Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday

السبت
الاحد
الاثنين
الثلاثاء
الاربعاء
الخميس
الجمعة

Saturday and Sunday are workdays; Thursday and Friday are the "weekend", since Friday is the Moslem holy day.

4. To express 'ago', /gabl/ is used before a time word:

gabl yoomeen

two days ago

/min/ is used to express 'since':

min yoom at-taluut

since Tuesday

5. /saakin/, 'living', is an "active participle", a word which acts like an adjective but is translated as a verb in English. There are several words like this in Arabic (we have met /faahim, faahma, faahmiin/); they will be discussed fully in Lesson 22.

saakin
saakna
saakniin

he lives, you (m) live, I (m) live
she lives, you (f) live, I (f) live
they live, you (p) live,
we live

This is used to mean living, in the sense of 'residing', only.

6. /zamaan/, 'a long time', is used with /min/, and only with reference to past time; it can also mean 'a long time ago'.

raaH min zamaan.	He went a long time ago.
9irif min zamaan.	He knew ('found out') a long time ago.

Used with an imperfect verb, this phrase can have a present perfect translation in English:

yi9rif min zamaan.	He has known for a long time.
--------------------	-------------------------------

7. Note that /ba9iid/ and /gariib/ both are used with the preposition /min/ when followed by a location word. When /ba9iid/ is followed by a noun or pronoun, it is used with /9an/. (cf. Structure Sentences 5 and 6.)

gariib min hina	near here
ba9iid min hina	far from here
ba9iid 9an beetana	far from our house

8. /lak/ and /liyya/ are examples of the preposition /li/ being used with a pronoun. This is further discussed in Lesson 24.

9. Note that while /riyaal/ and /dulaar/ have plural forms, they remain singular when counted with a numeral:

dulaaraat katiir	many dollars
riyaalaat katiir	many riyals
xamsa dulaar	five dollars
xamsa riyaal	five riyals

10. Other numbers are:

şifir	zero	صفر
talata9ş	thirteen	ثلاث عشر
arba9ta9ş	fourteen	أربع عشر
xamata9ş	fifteen	خمس عشر
sitta9ş	sixteen	ست عشر
saba9ta9ş	seventeen	سبع عشر
taman9ta9ş	eighteen	ثمان عشر
tisa9ta9ş	nineteen	تسع عشر
9işriin	twenty	عشرين
talaatiin	thirty	ثلاثين
arba9iin	forty	أربعين
xamsiin	fifty	خمسين
sittiin	sixty	ستين
sab9iin	seventy	سبعين
tamaniin	eighty	ثمانين
tis9iin	ninety	تسعين
xamsa wu 9işriin	twenty-five	خمس وعشرين
talaata w arba9iin	forty-three	أربع وثلاثين
sab9a wu tis9iin	ninety-seven	سبع وتسعين
(etc.)		
miyya	one hundred	مائة
miyyateen*	two hundred	مئتين
miyyaat	hundreds	مئات

miyya wu xamasta9	115	مائة وخمسة عشر
miyyateen wu xamsa wu 9i9riin	225	مئتين وخمسة وعشرين
miyyateen w arba9a wu sittiin (etc.)	264	مئتين وأربعة وستين

*A common alternate form is /miiteen/.

Higher numbers in the hundreds have special forms:

talatmiyya	300	ثلاثمائة
arba9miyya	400	أربعمائة
xamsmiyya*	500	خمسمائة
sittmiyya*	600	ستمائة
sab9miyya*	700	سبعمائة
tamanmiyya*	800	ثمانمائة
tis9miyya*	900	تسعمائة
alf	1000	ألف
alfeen	2000	ألفين
aalaaf	thousands	آلاف
alf wu miyyateen	1200	ألف ومئتين
alf wu miyya wu xamsa wu 9i9riin (etc.)	1125	ألف ومائة وخمسة وعشرين

*Common alternate forms are /xumsumiyya, suttumiyya, subu9miyya, tumunmiyya, tusu9miyya/. These are borrowed from the Egyptian dialect.

malyoon	million	مليون
malyooneen	two million	مليونين
balyoon	billion	بليون
balyooneen	two billion	بليونين
malyoon wu xamsmiyya wu xamsa wu 9i9riin	1,525,841	مليون وخمسمائة وخمسة وعشرين ألفاً وثمانمائة وواحد وأربعين
alf wu tamanmiyya wu waaHid w arba9iin		
malaayiin	millions	ملايين
balaayiin	billions	بلايين

These numbers take a special ending /-een/ for 'two' (this will be explained in the next lesson).

/miyya/ becomes /miyyat/ in a construct phrase:

talatmiyyat dulaar	300 dollars
miyyat alf dulaar	100,000 dollars
xamsmiyyat alf dulaar	500,000 dollars

Vocabulary Notes

beet, buyuut	house	بيت بيوت
9aari9, 9awaari9	street	شارع شوارع
9inwaan, 9anaawiin	address	عنوان عناوين
gariib, gariibiin	near	قريب قريبين
ba9iid (no plural)	far	بعيد

Drills

- Sixty plus nine equals sixty-nine. sittiin zaayid tis9a yisaawi ستين زائد تسعة يساوي تسعة وستين.
tis9a wu sittiin.

Continue:

15 + 7	800 + 200	3000 + 779
25 + 3	450 + 450	76 + 660
41 + 6	501 + 30	840 + 30

2. When did you (m) come to mita jiit al-mamlaka?
the Kingdom?

متا جيت المملكة؟

Substitute:

you (p)
he
they
you (f)
she

3. I have been here for three days. liyya hina talaata ayyaam.

لي هنا ثلاثة ايام.

Substitute:

5 days
7 days
10 days
6 hours
3 hours
a long time

4. Where do you (m) live? inta feen saakin?

انت فين ساكن؟

Substitute:

you (f)
they
she
he
the people
your friends
Ahmad

5. He lives on 14th Street. huwwa saakin fi šaari9 arba9ta9š.

هو ساكن في شارع اربعتعشر.

Substitute:

Gabil Street
she
near the embassy
far from my house
they
in Saudi Arabia
we
in Taif

6. We arrived Monday. wašalna yoom al-itneen.

وصلنا يوم الاثنين.

Substitute:

Thursday
Tuesday
Sunday

Friday
Monday
Saturday
Wednesday

Situations

1. (on the telephone)
A. Where is your office?
B. On 22nd Street, near the French school.
A. And your address?
B. 515, 22nd Street.
A. May I come at 4:30?
B. Are you living near here?
A. No, I can take my car.
B. OK. Goodby.
2.
A. Has he been here long? ('much')
B. Yes, he came long ago.
A. Where from?
B. From Dhahran.
A. What does he do?
B. He works in an American company.
A. Is he important in the company?
B. Yes, very important.
3.
A. May I bring my friend?
B. Of course, welcome. What's his name?
A. Abdel-Rahman. He's very nice.
B. Does he speak English?
A. A little. He studied English in school for six months.

LESSON 14

Dialogue

will	Ha-	حـ
he comes	yiji	يجي
A. When will he come?	mita Ha-yiji?	متا حيجي؟
after	ba9d	بعد
week	usbuu9	اسبوع
B. In a week, I hope. (‘after a week’)	ba9d usbuu9, in šaa’ aḷḷaah.	بعد اسبوع ان شا’ الله
A. Good. And your friend, Sharif?	ṭayyib. wu šaaHbak šariif?	طيب. وصاحبك شريف؟
I think	ažunn	اظن
weeks	asaabii9	اسبوع
B. After about three weeks, I think.	ažunn ba9d Hawaali talaata asaabii9.	اظن بعد حوالي ثلاثة اسابيع
period of time	mudda	مدة
A. That's a long time.	haadi mudda ṭawiila.	هادي مدة طويلة
B. Yes, truly.	iiwa, šaHiiH.	ايوه صحيح

Structure Sentences

1. We will go after an hour.	Ha-niruuH ba9d saa9a.	خروج بعد ساعة
2. We will go today.	Ha-niruuH al-yoom.	خروج اليوم
3. We will go today.	raH-niruuH al-yoom.	رُحْ نروح اليوم
4. I studied for about two years.	darast sanateen tagriiban.	درست سنتين تقريبا
5. They are our friends.	humma ašHaabana.	هم اصحابنا
6. My friend Maryam is here for a period of three days.	šaaHbati maryam hina li-muddat talaata ayyaam.	صاحبتني مريم هنا لمدة ثلاثة ايام
7. It's approximately 6:20.	as-saa9a sitta wu tult tagriiban.	الساعة ستة وثلاث تقريبا

Grammatical Notes

1. The future tense may be expressed with the imperfect verb, prefixed with /Ha-/ or /raH-/. Both prefixes are in widespread use (/Ha-/ is a borrowing from the Egyptian dialect). /Ha-/ is used throughout the Hijaz; /raH-/ is heard mostly in Jidda.

The future prefix is frequently omitted, however, and the future meaning is understood from other time words in the sentence:

mita yiwşal? yiwşal	When will he arrive?
bukra.	He'll arrive tomorrow.

mita Ha-yiwşal?	When will he arrive?
Ha-yiwşal bukra.	He'll arrive tomorrow.

mita raH-yiwşal?	When will he arrive?
raH-yiwşal bukra.	He'll arrive tomorrow.

The lack of distinction in usage between the imperfect and future tense is based on a grammatical concept of tense which is different from that in European languages. Perfect and imperfect tenses are technically different from past and present tenses in that they differentiate between "completed" and "incomplete" action, rather than a time frame. For this reason, the present and future tenses have blended together somewhat, with the prefixed future tense used most often for emphasis.

2. Arabic nouns have three types of "number": singular, plural, and dual. Dual nouns are marked with the suffix /-een/ (/ -teen/ for feminine nouns which end in /-a/). While we will learn a few words for which the pattern /itneen/ + plural is used, the large majority of nouns are dualized:

kitaabeen	two books
saa9ateen	two watches, two hours
madrasateen	two schools

If the noun ends in a vowel and is masculine, the ending is /-yeen/:

kursiyeen	two chairs
-----------	------------

When a dual noun takes an adjective, it remains plural:

kitaabeen judud	two new books
saa9ateen Hilwiin	two pretty watches

3. Other expression for telling time:

as-saa9a arba9a wu xamsa.	It's 4:05.
as-saa9a arba9a wu 9ašara.	It's 4:10.
as-saa9a arba9a wu tult.	It's 4:20. ('and one-third')
as-saa9a arba9a wu nuşş illa xamsa.	It's 4:25. ('and one-half less five')
as-saa9a arba9a wu nuşş wu xamsa.	It's 4:35. ('and one-half and five')
as-saa9a xamsa illa tult.	It's 4:40. It's 20 to 5. ('five less one-third')
as-saa9a xamsa illa 9ašara.	It's 4:50. It's 10 to 5. ('five less ten')
as-saa9a xamsa illa xamsa.	It's 4:55. It's 5 to 5. ('five less five')

4. /li muddat/ is part of a construct phrase, used with time words, literally, 'for a period of', composed of /li/, 'for', and /mudda/, 'period'. It is optional, used for clarification.

5. Numbers 11 and above are followed by nouns in the singular:

iHda9\$ kitaab	eleven books
9i\$riin kitaab	twenty books
miyyat sana	one hundred years
arba9 wu 9i\$riin saa9a	twenty-four hours

6. /Hawaali/ may alternate with /tagriiban/, 'about, approximately'. /Hawaali/ is used before the time word; /tagriiban/ may be used before or after it in the sentence.

Vocabulary Notes

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Dual</u>	<u>Plural</u>	
second	saaniya	saanyateen*	sawaani	ثانية ثانيتين ثواني
minute	dagiiga	dagiigateen	dagaayig	دقيقة دقيقتين دقائق
hour	saa9a	saa9ateen	saa9aat	ساعة ساعتين ساعات
day	yoom	yoomeen	ayyaam	يوم يومين أيام
week	usbuu9	usbuu9een	asaabii9	أسبوع أسبوعين أسابيع
month	\$ahar	\$ahreen*	\$uhuur	شهر شهرين شهور
year	sana	sanateen	siniin, sanawaat**	سنة سنتين سنين سنوات

* Note that the second vowel is dropped before adding the dual suffix.

** The second plural is more "classical".

bi\$-za\$	exactly	بالضبط
tagriiban	approximately	تقريباً
al-yoom	today	اليوم
bukra	tomorrow	بكرة
gab1	before	قبل
ba9deen	later	بعد
ba9d \$wayya	after a little while	بعد شوية
gariib	soon	قريب
rub9 saa9a	a quarter hour	ربع ساعة
nu\$ \$aa9a	a half hour	نصف ساعة

Drills

1. He will go in an hour. Ha-yiruuH ba9d saa9a. حبروج بعد ساعة.

Substitute:

in a week
in two years
[for a period of] a month and a half
in five minutes
today
in a little while
later
soon, I hope
before 3:00
at 2:10 exactly

2. I will come after a long ana raH-aji ba9d mudda \$awiila. أنا رَجَّ أَجِي بعد مدة طويلة.

Substitute:

we will come
we will return
soon, I hope
tomorrow

they
later
before 5:30
go
I
after a short while
in two minutes exactly
come
in a quarter hour

3. Where is your friend (m)? feen şaaHbak?

فين صاحبك؟

Substitute:

your friend (f)
your friends
my friends
his friend (m)
our friend
her friends
her friend (f)
my friend (f)
my friend (m)
your friend (m)
your (p) friends

4. A. When will your friend come? mita yiji şaaHbak?

متا يجي صاحبك؟

B. My friend will come the day after tomorrow. şaaHbi yiji ba9d bukra.

صاحبى يجي بكره.

Continue asking the question, and giving the following answers:

after an hour
in about ten minutes
soon, I think
in a year
in two weeks
in a short time
today

5. Given the phrase or sentence in the singular, change it to dual:

walad
walad şaghiir
şaa9i9
beet
ba9d usbuu9
al-maşaar hina.
jiib kursi.
darast li-muddat şahar.

ولد
ولد صغير
شارع
بيت
بعد اسبوع
المطاعم هنا
جيب كرسي
درست كمدة شهر

6. Given the word or phrase in the singular, change it to plural:

dagiiga
şaa9i9 şawiil
ajnabi
şarika amrikiyya
dulaar

دقيقة
شارع طويل
اجنبي
شركة امريكية
دولار

7. Please, when will
you (m) go?

min faḍlak, mita raH-tiruuH?

من فضلك متى
تخرج؟

Substitute:

When will you answer them?
What time did they leave?
Which one (m) did you (m) like?
Who will we leave with?
Was he carrying much?
Did I leave my watch here?
How did they answer the question?
What did you (p) do?

Situations

1.
 - A. When will your friend (m) come?
 - B. I don't know. Soon, I hope.
 - A. In about a week?
 - B. In a week or two, I think.
 - A. Maybe I will come and greet him here.
 - B. Welcome, of course.
2.
 - A. When will they arrive at the airport?
 - B. I don't know; I have to ask.
 - A. What did he say?
 - B. At exactly 10:20. It's still early.
 - A. From which door will they come?
 - B. That one.
3.
 - A. Did you (p) sleep long?
 - B. No, we slept an hour and a quarter. Then ('later') we took the car and went to my friend Ahmad.
 - A. How is Ahmad? (literally, 'Ahmad, how is he?') I've missed him.
 - B. Fine, he sends his greetings.
 - A. Thanks.

LESSON 15

Dialogue

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| permit me | ismaHli | إسمحلي |
| post office | bariid | بريد |
| A. Permit me, how do I go to the post office? | ismaHli, keef aruuH al-bariid? | إسمحلي، كيف أروح البريد؟ |
| turn | luff | لف |
| right | yamiin | يمين |
| end | aaxir | آخر |
| B. Turn right at the end of the street | luff yamiin fi aaxir aš-šaari9. | لف يمين في آخر الشارع. |
| A. And then? | wu ba9deen? | وبعدين؟ |
| go | ruuH | روح |
| traffic light | išaara | إشارة |
| left | šimaal | شمال |
| facing | mugaabil | مقابل |
| bank | bank | بنك |
| B. Go to the light and turn left. The post office is facing the bank. | ruuH lil-išaara wu luff šimaal. al-bariid mugaabil al-bank. | روح للإشارة ولف شمال. البريد مقابل البنك. |
| A. Thanks. ('you are thanked') | maškuur. | مشكور. |
| thanks | šukr | شكر |
| duty | waajib | واجب |
| B. You're welcome. ('no thanks for a duty') | la šukr 9ala waajib. | لا شكر على واجب. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The school is beside the post office. | al-madrasa jamb al-bariid. | المدرسة جنب البريد. |
| 2. The post office is straight ahead, behind the bank. | al-bariid dughri, wara l-bank. | البريد دغري، وراء البنك. |
| 3. Cross the street. | 9addi š-šaari9. | عدي الشارع. |
| 4. The ministry is at the beginning of the street. | al-wizaara fi awal aš-šaari9. | الوزارة في أول الشارع. |

5. Cross there.

9addi min hinaak.

عدي من هناك

Grammatical Notes

1. /luff/ and /ruuH/ are examples of the imperative (command) in Arabic.

The imperative is formed from the second person form of the imperfect verb, omitting the person prefixes:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>Imperative</u>		
laff, yiluff (basic form: tiluff)	(m) luff (f) luffi (p) luffu	turn	لف لفي لغوا
9adda, yi9addi (basic form: ti9addi)	(m) 9addi* (f) 9addi* (p) 9addu	cross	عدي عدي عدوا
katab, yiktub (basic form: tiktub)	(m) iktub (f) iktubi (p) iktubu	write	اكتب اكتبي اكتبوا

*If the masculine imperative ends in /-i/, it cannot be distinguished from the feminine imperative.

Other verbs presented

so far: (in the masculine imperative form; feminine and plural are predictable)	iftaH igfil i9mil idrus itkallam 9arrif ista'zin ista9mil ruuH suuf naam guul jiib is'al xud imsi sawwi siib siil rudd Huṭṭ insa	open close do study speak introduce take permission use go see sleep say bring ask take go do leave behind carry answer put forget	افتح اغل اعمل ادرس اتكلم عزّم استأذن استعمل روح شوف نام قول جيب ايجال خذ امشي سوي سبب شيل رد حط انسى
---	---	---	---

/ja/ has an irregular imperative:

(m) ta9aal (f) ta9aali (p) ta9aalu	come	تعال تعالين تعالوا
--	------	--------------------------

3. /iṣaara/, 'traffic light', may also refer to any type of signal.

4. When asking and giving directions, /min/ may be used in Arabic, and is usually not translated into English:

niruuH min feen?	Which way do we go?
ruuHu min hina.	Go here. Go this way.
ruuHu min hinaak.	Go there. Go that way.

Vocabulary Notes

Prepositions

mugaabil	facing	مقابل
guddaam	in front of	قدام
wara	behind	ورا
jamb	beside	جنب
foog	up; above	فوق
taHat	down; below	تحت
barra	outside	برا
juwwa	inside	جوا

Verbs

laff, yiluff (laffet)	turn	لف يلف (لفيت)
Sadda, yi9addi (9addeet)	cross	عدى يعدي (عديت)

Nouns

iSaara, -aat	traffic signal	إشارة -ات
kubri, kabaari	bridge	كبري
9imaara, -aat	building	عمارة -ات
bank, bunuuk	bank	بنك
waaajib, -aat	duty	واجب -ات

Drills

1. Turn right at the end of the street. luff yamiin fi aaxir as-saari9. لف يمين في آخر الشارع.

Substitute:

at the beginning of the street
on that street
at Mecca Road
left
after that building
behind the bank
before the traffic signal
near the post office

2. Given the sentence in the perfect tense, change it to a command (to a man):

fataH al-baab.	فتح الباب
sallam 9alee.	سلم عليه
gafal al-baab.	غفل الباب
sawwa l-waaajib.	سوى الواجب
axad as-sayyaara.	أخذ السيارة
raaH al-maṭaar.	راح المطار

Repeat, giving the command to a woman, to a group.

3. Then go straight. ba9deen ruuH dughri. بعدين روح دغري

Substitute:

cross the bridge
turn left
go inside
come here
open your book
introduce your friends
use my car
take ten dollars
cross from there
do your homework (literally, 'your duty')

Repeat, giving the command to a woman, to a group.

4. The post office is facing al-bariid mugaabil al-bank. البريد مقابل البنك.
the bank.

Substitute:

inside
in front of
beside
above
beside, on the right
the bridge
on the left
the building
under
outside
near

5. This car is from Germany. haadi s-sayyaara min almaanya. هادي السيارة من ألمانيا.

Substitute:

England
overseas (literally, 'outside')
Japan
my brother
my father
our friends

Situations

1.
 - A. Permit me, where is the bank building?
 - B. The bank building is on that street.
 - A. How do I go?
 - B. Cross the street, go to the signal, and go straight ahead.
The building is at the end of the street.
 - A. Can I leave my car there?
 - B. Yes, in front of the building.
2.
 - A. Where is the Foreign Ministry?
 - B. Not far from the embassy. Go to the light and turn right.
 - A. Will I see it on the right?
 - B. No, on the left.
 - A. Thanks.
 - B. Not at all. ('No thanks for a duty')

LESSON 16

Dialogue

say	guul	قول
costs	yikallif	يكلف
A. Tell me, how much does this cost?	guul, haada yikallif kam?	قول، هادا يكلف كم؟
cheap	raxiiş	رخيص
without	bala	بلا
money	fuluus	فلوس
B. This is cheap. No charge.	haada raxiiş. bala fuluus.*	هادا رخيص بلا فلوس.
A. So how much?	ya9ni gaddees?	يعني قديش؟
B. Twenty riyals.	9işriin riyaal bass.	عشرين ريال بس.
believable	ma9guul	معقول
expensive	ghaali	غالي
I give	addi	ادي
A. Unbelievable! That's very expensive. I'll give you ten.	muu ma9guul! haada marra ghaali. ana addiik 9ašara.	مو معقول! هادا مرة غالي. انا اديك عشرة.
B. No, no.	la', la'.	لا لا.
speech	kalaam	كلام
A. How much then? Final price. ('final speech')	b-kam? aaxir kalaam.	بكم؟ آخر كلام.
sake	xaaşir	خاطر
B. OK, just for you, 18.	şayyib, 9ašaan xaaşrak, tamanşa9ş.	طيب عشان خاطرك نمنعش، tamanşa9ş.
finished	xalaş	خلص
A. Twelve...OK, 15 and that's it.	itna9ş...şayyib, xamaşta9ş wu xalaş.	اثنت عشر...طيب، خمس عشر وخلص.
congratulations ('blessed')	mabruuk	مبروك
B. OK. Congratulations.	şayyib. mabruuk.	طيب مبروك.
bless	yibaarik	يبارك
A. Thanks. ('May God bless you')	ałlaah yibaarik fiik.	الله يبارك فيك.

*A common alternative way to say this is /b-balaas/.

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. This is ten piastres, half a riyal. | haada b-9ašara guruuš, nušš riyaal. | هادا بمشرة قروش،
نص ريال. |
| 2. Money is important. | al-fuluus muhimma. | الفلوس مهمة. |
| 3. Go for his sake. | ruuH 9ašaan xaaṭru. | روح عشان خاطره. |
| 4. Can you give me two riyals? | mumkin tiddiini riyaaleen? | ممكن تديني ريالين؟ |
| 5. Congratulations on the new car. | mabruuk 9ala s-sayyaara l-jadiida. | مبروك على السيارة الجديدة. |
| 6. The book cost me eight dollars. | al-kitaab kallafni tamanya dulaar. | الكتاب كلفني ثمانية دولار. |
| 7. Its price is reasonable. | si9ru ma9guul. | سعره معقول. |
| 8. The price is fixed. | as-si9r maHduud. | السعر محدود. |
| 9. I spent a lot of money. | šaraft fuluus katiir. | صرفت فلوس كثير. |
| 10. Anything else? ('Any other service?') | ayy xidma taanya? | اي خدمة ثانية؟ |

Grammatical Notes

1. /guul/, 'tell me', is very informal. Also used is /aguul/, 'I'll tell [you]', 'hey!'.
 2. /bala/, 'without', is used with inanimate objects, especially money:
raaH bala fuluus. He went without money.
- For persons, /min gheer/ is used (some speakers use this word exclusively):
raaH min gheer axuu. He went without his brother.
3. /fuluus/, 'money', is a feminine noun, and takes feminine adjectives (except for /katiir/, which is not declined for gender or number).
 4. /kam/, 'how many', and /gaddees/, 'how much', are interchangeable when discussing prices, but not in other situations. /b-kam/ is the most common expression for inquiring about a price.
 5. The basic unit of money in Saudi Arabia is the Saudi riyal, which contains twenty piastres, each of which contains five halala.

haada b-riyaal.	This is ('costs') one riyal.
haada b-riyaal waaHid.	This is one riyal.
haada b-riyaal wu nušš.	This is one and one-half riyals.
haada b-riyaal wu garšeen.	This is one riyal and two piastres.
haada b-rub9 riyaal.	This is a quarter riyal.
haada b-riyaaleen.	This is two riyals.
haada b-xamsa riyaal.	This is five riyals.
haada b-xamašta9š riyaal.	This is fifteen riyals.
haada b-9ašara guruuš.	This is ten piastres.
haada b-nušš garš.	This is one-half piastre.

6. /adda, yiddi/, 'to give', is usually used with direct object pronouns (this is an idiom); its use with indirect object pronouns (with /li-/) is technically more correct, but is usually heard in Meccan speech, and is not presented here.

(some examples)

addaani	he gave me
addaahum	he gave them
addatni	she gave me
addatak	she gave you (m)
addoohum	they gave them
addeetaha	I gave her
addeenaa	we gave him

7. /9aṣaan xaaṭrak/, 'for your sake', is conjugated for all persons. Note that before suffixes which begin with a vowel, the /i/ is dropped:

(Basic word: xaaṭir, 'sake')

9aṣaan xaaṭru	for his sake
9aṣaan xaaṭirha	for her sake
9aṣaan xaaṭirhum	for their sake
9aṣaan xaaṭrak	for your (m) sake
9aṣaan xaaṭrik	for your (f) sake
9aṣaan xaaṭirkum	for your (p) sake
9aṣaan xaaṭri	for my sake
9aṣaan xaaṭirna	for our sake

This is often abbreviated to /9aṣaan/ + the pronoun:

9aṣaanu	for him
9aṣaanaha	for her
9aṣaanahum	for them
9aṣaanak	for you (m)
9aṣaanik	for you (f)
9aṣaanakum	for you (p)
9aṣaani	for me
9aṣaanana	for us

8. /mabruuk/ is used with the preposition /9ala/ (/9a/) to mean 'congratulations on..., for...' (cf. Structure Sentence 5).

9. /taani/ (/taanya, taanyiin/) literally means 'second', but is frequently used to mean 'other' or 'else':

ayy xidma taanya? Any other service?

Vocabulary Notes

adda, yiddi (addeet)	give	ادي يدي (اريت)
kallaf, yikallif	cost	كلف يكلف
ṣaraf, yiṣruf	spend, exchange money	صرف يصرف
si9r, as9aar	price	سعر اسعار
riyaal, -aat	riyal	ريال -ات
garṣ, guruuṣ	piastre	قرش قروش
xidma, xadamaat	service	خدمة خدمات

bass

only

بسر

ghaali, -yiin
raxiiṣ, ruxaaṣexpensive
cheapغالي-تتن
رخيṣ رخاصDrills

1. How much does this cost?
- haada yikallif
- kam?

هادا يكلف كم؟

Substitute:

these
those
this book
that car
these pens

2. His house cost him
-
- a lot.

beetu kallafu katiir.

بيته كلفه كثير

Substitute:

his car
her house
my watch
the chairs
the company's car
the new airport

3. He went without money.

raaH bala fuluus.

راح بلا فلوس

Substitute:

his brother
their son
his books
his brothers and sisters
his watch

4. I'll give you ten.

addiik 9aṣara.

اديك عشرة

Substitute:

money
he will give you (m)
she will give you (m)
she will give me
we will give them
a good price
they will give us
they must give us
a fixed price

5. I gave the man
-
- five riyals.

addeet lir-rijjaal
xamsa riyaal.

اديت للرجال خمسة ريال

Substitute:

only three piastres
he gave
we gave
eleven riyals
she gave us

her
the homework
her watch
me

- مبروك على السيارة
الحديدة.

Substitute:

the new watch
the new [baby] boy
your book
the new house
the new car

Situations

1.
 - A. How much is this (f)?
 - B. Only ten riyals.
 - A. No, give me a reasonable price.
 - B. For you, nine.
 - A. That's very expensive.
 - B. That's the final price.
2.
 - A. His car is very big.
 - B. Yes, and expensive, too. He spent a lot of money.
 - A. Is it new?
 - B. Yes, he bought it from France. Oh, sorry (/9afwan/), from Germany.
3.
 - A. I got this pen for a half riyal.
 - B. Unbelievable! That's a good price. How did you do it?
 - A. I spoke in Arabic and he gave me the pen for that price.
 - B. You should get two or three.
 - A. Yes, maybe.

Cultural Notes

1. Much purchasing in the Arab world, especially in the "souk" (market), is made through a bargaining process. Generally, you offer back about one-half to two-thirds of the quoted price, and gradually the buyer and seller meet somewhere in the middle. Many establishments have now instituted "fixed prices", for example, grocery stores and pharmacies.
2. /mabruuk/, 'congratulations', is used much more frequently in Arabic than in English. It is used not only for "significant" occasions (a wedding, birth of a child, graduation, etc.), but also, for example, when someone has made a purchase or finished a task.

LESSON 17

Dialogue

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| pleased | 9ajab | عجب |
| A. I like this. How much? | haada 9ajabni. b-kam? | هادا عجبني. بكم؟ |
| sure | mit'akkid | مؤكد |
| B. I'm not sure. Wait a moment. Ten riyals. | ana mana mit'akkid. istanna swayya. 9asara riyaal. | انا منا متأكد. استنى شوية عشرة ريال. |
| better | aHsan | احسن |
| or else | wala | ولا |
| I buy | aštari | اشترى |
| A. That's too much. Tell me a better price or I won't buy anything. | haada katiir. gulli si9r aHsan wala ma aštari kayy. | هادا كثير. قوللي سعر احسن ولا ما اشترى شي. |
| speech | kalaam | كلام |
| B. Ten riyals, that's all. | 9asara riyaal, aaxir kalaam. | عشرة ريال، آخر كلام. |
| never mind | ma9aleeš | معلش |
| maybe | yimkin | يمكن |
| A. OK, never mind. Maybe later. | ṭayyib ma9aleeš. yimkin ba9deen, in šaa' allaah. | طيب معلش يمكن بعددين ان شاء الله. |
| you (m) want | tibgha | تبغى |
| B. Do you want to see anything else? | tibgha tišuuṭ kayy taani? | تبغى تشوف شي ثاني؟ |
| A. Not now, thanks. | muu daHHiin, šukran. | مو دحين، شكرا. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I want to buy an American car. | abgha aštari sayyaara amrikiyya. | ابغى اشترى سيارة امريكية. |
| 2. I'm sure that Ahmad went. | ana mit'akkid innu aHmad raaH. | انا متأكد انه احمد راح. |
| 3. He bought another watch. | aštara saa9a taanya. | اشترى ساعة ثانية. |
| 4. Come another time. | ta9aal marra taanya. | تعال مرة ثانية. |
| 5. I don't like these things. | haadi l-ašyaa' ma ti9jibni. | هادي الاشياء ما تعجبني. |
| 6. Never mind, it's not important. | ma9aleeš, muu muhimm. | معلش مو مهم. |

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 7. He won't want to spend a lot of money. | ma yibgha yiṣruf fuluus katiir. | ما يبغى بصرف فلوس كثير |
| 8. Take this or this. | xud haada aw haada. | خذ هادا او هادا |
| 9. Do you want this or this? | tibgha haada walla haada? | تبغى هادا ولا هادا؟ |
| 10. Maybe he'll arrive early. | yimkin yiwṣal badri. | يمكن يوصل بدري |

Grammatical Notes

1. /9ajab, yi9jib/, 'to please', is used with a direct object. It is generally translated into English as 'to like', in which case its structure is the reverse of the English expression. The verb is most commonly used in the perfect tense, and may mean past or present; this may be considered idiomatic.

9ajabni.	I liked it (m). ('it pleased me')
9ajabatni.	I liked it (f). I like it (f).
9ajabooni.	I liked them. I like them.
yi9jibni.	I like him.
ti9jibni.	I like her.
yi9jibooni.	I like them.
yi9jiboona.	We like them.
haada 9ajabak?	Do you (m) like this (m)?
haadi 9ajabatak?	Do you (m) like this (f)?
humma 9ajaboo.	He likes them.

2. /innu/ 'that', is used as a "relative pronoun" to introduce a clause. It may also be used with a pronoun suffix:

innu*	that he...
innaha	that she...
innahum	that they...
innak	that you (m)...
innik	that you (f)...
innakum	that you (p)...
inni	that I...
innana	that we...

*Note that the word /innu/ may simply mean 'that' (rather than 'that he'), without referring to anything else in the sentence.

ana mit'akkid innu haada	I am sure that this is
ghaali.	expensive.
ana faahim innu haada	I understand that this is
ghalaṭ.	wrong.
ana faahim innaha jaat.	I understand that she came.
iHna mit'akkidiin	We are sure that they are
innahum judud.	new.

'wala/, /aw/, and /walla/ may all be translated 'or' in English.

wala/ is used to mean 'or else' or 'nor' in negative statements:

.wala ma aṣtari šayy.	...or [else] I won't buy anything.
kaan fil-beet wala	He was not at home nor ('or') at
fil-maktab.	the office.

/aw/ is used for affirmative statements:

xud haada aw haada.	Take this or this.
addiini itneen aw	Give me two or three.
talaata.	

/walla/ is used for questions:

tibgha haada walla	Do you want this or this?
haada?	
huwwa raaH walla la'?	Did he go or not ('or no')?

It can be used with /amma/ to mean 'either...or':

amma bukra walla	Either tomorrow or later.
ba9deen.	
amma huwwa walla hiyya.	Either he or she.

/aw/ and /walla/ are used interchangeably by some speakers.

4. /ma/ is used as the negation word for verbs in the perfect, imperfect, and future tenses:

aHmad ma raaH.	Ahmad did not go.
ma aštari b-haada	I won't buy for this price.
s-si9r.	
ma sawwat šayy.	She didn't do anything.
ma gafalu l-beet.	They didn't close the house.
ma H-as'al as-su'aal	I won't ask this question.
haada.	
ma raH-nista9mil haadi	We won't use this money.
l-fuluus.	
ma Ha-yiju bukra.	They won't come tomorrow.

It is also used with /fii/, 'there is', 'there are':

fii naas katiir.	There are many people.
ma fii naas katiir.	There are not many people.
fii šayy hinaak.	There is something there.
ma fii šayy hinaak.	There isn't anything there.

5. /yibgha/, 'to want', may be used alone or as a helping verb with other verbs in a verb phrase. It is almost always used in the imperfect tense or with /kaan/:

abgha atkallam	I want to speak English.
ingiliizi.	
ma nibgha niftaH	We don't want to open the
al-baab.	door.
ma kunt abgha ašūufaha.	I didn't want to see her.
kaanu yibghu yi9arrifoo	They wanted to introduce
9alayya.	him to me.

/yibgha/ is a "pure" Saudi word, and is not heard in other Arabic dialects. When speaking with foreigners or non-Saudi Arabs, Saudis may use forms taken from other dialects, such as /bididi/ (/biddak/, /biddaha/, etc.), taken from Palestinian, or /9aawiz/ (/9aawza/, /9aawziin/), taken from Egyptian.

6. /yimkin/, 'maybe', may be used alone or as a modal word with an imperfect verb (like /laazim/ and /mumkin/). It does not change form:

yimkin yiwšal badri. Maybe he will arrive early.
yimkin tiwšal badri. Maybe she will arrive early.

Vocabulary Notes

šayy, ašyaa'	thing	شي اشيا'
baa9, yibii9 (bi9t)	sell	باع يبيع (بعث)
aštara, yištari (aštareet)	buy	أشترى يشتري (اشترى)

Drills

1. I like this. ('This pleased me.') haada 9ajabni. هادا عجبني.

Substitute:

those
pleased them
pleased her
this room
pleased me
that house
pleased us
that house
pleased us
that thing
this thing

2. I don't know anything. ma a9rif šayy. ما اعرف شي.

Substitute:

huwwa	هو
humma	هم
iHna	أنا
hiyya	هي
uxti	أختي
axwaati	أخواتي
šaaHbi	صاحبي
intu	انتو

3. Do you (m) want to see anything else? tibgha tišuuf šayy taani? تبغش تشوف شي ثاني؟

Substitute:

she
you (p)
the house
he
they
this or that
you (f)

8. Given the sentence in the affirmative, change it to negative:

darasat 9arabi.
Ha-tiwʕal ba9d bukra.
saab uxtu fil-beet.
ana gult haada.
ana adri feen humma.
waHaʕni.
Haʕteetahum 9aʕ-ʕarabiiza.
Ha-niruuH ba9deen.
sibna l-aʕyaa' wara l-ʕaab.

درست عربي.
حتوصل بعد بكره.
ساب اخته في البيت.
انا قلت هادرا.
انا ادري فين هم.
وحشني.
حطيتهم بالطريزة.
خنروح بعدين.
سبنا الاشياء ورا الباب.

Situations

1.
 - A. How do I go to the city?
 - B. Cross the bridge and then straight ahead. Can you take my friend (m)?
 - A. Of course. We will go in my car.
 - B. Thanks. He wants to buy something there.
2.
 - A. When will you (p) go?
 - B. If God wills, at the end of the month. I'm not sure.
 - A. You should go now.
 - B. We want to go now, but we spent [so] much money.
 - A. Well, never mind.
3.
 - A. I want to buy those chairs. I like them.
 - B. Yes, we saw them yesterday and liked them, too.
 - A. How much do they cost?
 - B. I asked and the man told me a reasonable price, about thirty riyals.
 - A. Good, I'll take three or four.
 - B. Me too.
4.
 - A. When will your friend (f) leave?
 - B. I asked her but she didn't answer me.
 - A. I think she wants to leave on Thursday.
 - B. She's not sure.

LESSON 18

Dialogue

age	9umr	عمر
A. How old are you?	kam 9umrak?	كم عمرك؟
holiday	9iid	عيد
birth	miilaad	ميلاد
coming	jayy	جَيّ
January	yanaayir	يناير
B. I'm 25. My birthday will be next month, in January.	9umri xamsa wu 9isriin sana. 9iid miilaadi Ha-yikuun as-šahar al-jayy fi yanaayir.	عمري خمسة وعشرين سنة. عيد ميلادي سيكون الشهر الجي في يناير.
older, bigger	akbar	أكبر
born	mawluud	مولود
A. I'm older than you. I was born in 1948. ('I am born in 1948.')	ana akbar minnak. ana mawluud fi 9aam alf wu tis9miyya wu tamanya w arba9iin.	انا اكبر منك. انا مولود في عام الف وتسعمية وثمانية واربعين.
B. Really?	šaHiIH?	صحيح؟
A. Yes, I'm two years older than you. I'm the oldest of my brothers and sisters.	iiwa, ana akbar minnak b-sanateen. ana akbar axwaani.	ايوه، انا اكبر منك. انا بستانين. انا اكبر اخواني.

Structure Sentences

1. He is three and one-half.	9umru talaata siniin wu nuṣṣ.	عمره ثلاثة سنين ونصف.
2. She is eleven.	9umraha iHḡa9ṣ sana.	عمرها احدى عشر سنة.
3. My birthday is the day after tomorrow.	9iid miilaadi ba9d bukra.	عيد ميلادي بعد بكرة.
4. Let's go next week.	yaḷḷa niruuH al-usbuu9 al-jayy.	يلله نروح الاسبوع الجي.
5. Let's go (leave).	yaḷḷa nimṣi.	يلله نمشي.
6. This is more beautiful.	haada ajmal.	هادا اجمل.
7. She is older than her sister.	hiyya akbar min uxtaha.	هي اكبر من اختها.
8. This is the most beautiful.	haada l-ajmal.	هادا الاجمل.
9. This is the cheapest book.	haada l-kitaab al-arxaṣ.	هادا الكتاب الارخص.
10. This is the cheapest book.	haada arxaṣ kitaab.	هادا ارخص كتاب.

Grammatical Notes

1. /kam/, 'how many', is followed by a singular noun:

kam sana	how many years?
kam kitaab	how many books?
kam waaHid	how many [ones]?

2. /jayy/, 'next' (literally, 'coming'), is used with time words, and agrees in gender with the noun it modifies:

al-usbuu9 al-jayy	next week
aš-šahar al-jayy	next month
yoom al-itneen al-jayy	next Monday
as-sana l-jayya	next year
as-siniin al-jayya	the coming years

3. The "foreign" months (/aš-šuhuur al-ifranjiyya/) are:

yanaayir	January
fibraayir	February
maaris	March
abriil	April
maayu	May
yuunya	June
yuulya	July
ughuštus	August
sibtambar	September
uktuubar	October
nufambar	November
disambar	December

يناير
فبراير
مارس
أبريل
مايو
يونيو
يوليو
أغسطس
سبتمبر
أكتوبر
نوفمبر
ديسمبر

Arabia officially follows the Islamic calendar, with its own months (Lesson 47), but Saudis frequently use the western months when dealing with foreigners.

4. When citing a year, the number is usually preceded by /9aam/, 'the year of' (this is the classical word for 'year'). If the year is after 1900, the numbers 'one thousand and nine hundred' may be omitted:

9aam alf wu tis9miyya 1967
wu sab9a wu sittiin

9aam sab9a wu sittiin 1967

5. The pattern for forming comparative adjectives is:

aC₁C₂aC₃

Some adjectives are slightly irregular because of the root consonants:

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	
kabiir	akbar	big, bigger; old, older
šaghiir	ašghar	small, smaller
katiir	aktar	much, more
Hilu	aHla	pretty, prettier
ghaali	aghla	expensive, more expensive
muhimm	ahamm	important, more important

The comparative adjective is used alone or with /min/ (cf. Structure Sentences 6 and 7.)

To make the adjective superlative, the same form is used with the definite article /al-/, or in construct with a noun (cf. Structure Sentences 8, 9, and 10.)

These adjective forms do not change for gender and number.

6. Some adjectives cannot be made comparative with this pattern:

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Comparative</u>
mabsuut	mabsuut aktar happy, happier

7. /mawluud/, 'born', is declined for gender and number:

- (m) mawluud
(f) mawluuda
(p) mawluudiin

8. /min/, when used with pronoun suffixes, has the base form /minn-/:

minnu	from him
minnaha	from her
minnahum	from them
minnak	from you (m)
minnik	from you (f)
minnakum	from you (p)
minni	from me
minnana	from us

9. /yalla/ is used as 'let's go', 'hurry up'. It may be used alone, with an imperfect verb in the 'we' form (cf. Structure Sentences 4 and 5), or with an imperative verb.

Vocabulary Notes

jamiil, (no plural)	beautiful
galiil, -a, -iin	few

جميل
قليل - بن

Summary of adjectives:

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Comparative Form</u> (regular)
kabiir	akbar
ṣaghiir	aṣghar
katiir	aktar
gadiim	aḡdam
ṭawiil	aṭwal
gaṣiir	aḡṣar
tagiil	aṭgal
laṭiif	alṭaf
baḡiid	abḡad
gariib	agrab
wiḥiṣ	awḥaṣ
raxiis	arxaṣ
jamiil	ajmal
ṭayyib	aṭyab
	(irregular)
jadiid	ajadd
xafiif	axaff
galiil	aḡall
muhimm	aḡamm

أكبر
أصغر
أكثر
أقدم
أطول
أقصر
أثقل
الطف
أبعد
أقرب
أوحش
أرخص
أجمل
أطيب

أجد
أخف
أقل
أهم

ghaali
Hilu
mabsuuṭ
ta9baan
ma9guul

aghla
aHla
mabsuuṭ aktar
ta9baan aktar
ma9guul aktar

اغلي
احلي
مبسوط اكثر
تعيان اكثر
معقول اكثر

The word most often used as comparative for 'good' is irregular. (It comes from a classical word, /Hasan/, 'good', which is not used in this dialect.)

aHsan

better

احسن

Drills

1. How old are you (m)?

kam 9umrak?

كم عمرك؟

Substitute:

she
they
I
you (f)
he
you (p)

2. I am 25 years old.

9umri xamsa wu 9iṣriin sana. عمري خمسة وعشرين سنة.

Substitute:

he
you (p)
you (f)
she
they

3. My birthday will be next month.

9iid miilaadi Ha-yikuun
aṣ-ṣahar al-jayy.

عيد ميلادي سيكون الشهر الجي.

Substitute:

our birthday
his birthday
next week
next Tuesday
your (f) birthday
their birthday
next Friday
my birthday
next month

4. I was born in 1948.

ana mawluud fi 9aam alf wu
tis9miyya wu tamanya w
arba9iin.

انا مولود في عام
الف وتسعمية
وثمانية واربعين.

Substitute:

she
1951
my brother
they
we
1935
he
1893

5. I am older than you (m). ana akbar minnak.

انا اكبر منك.

Substitute:

than he
younger (smaller)
more handsome
than they
than she
shorter
newer
than you (p)
better
than you (m)

6. He is older by two years. huwwa akbar b-sanateen.

هو اكبر بستين.

Substitute:

3 years
2 weeks
17 years
8 months
5 1/2 hours
many years

7. Let's go.

yaġġa niruuH.

بلله نروح.

Substitute:

Let's do that.
Let's close the house.
(to a man) Close the door.
(to a woman) Bring the chair.
Let's go outside.
(to a group) Buy it (m).

8. This is the cheapest book.

haada arxaş kitaab.

هاذا ارخص كتاب.

Substitute:

the prettiest girl
the best room
the lightest book
the longest sentence
the biggest door
the most expensive car
the nicest boy
the most important question

9. Given the adjective, change it to comparative:

al-walad gaṣiir.
ana mabsuuf.
haada kwayyis.
al-imtiHaan ṭawiil.
al-waraga xafiifa.
al-maaṣa Hilwa.
as-si9r ghaali.
al-fuluus galiila.

الولد قصير.
انا مبسوط.
هاذا كويس.
الامتحان طويل.
الورقة خفيفة.
الماسة حلوة.
السعر غالي.
الفلوس قليلة.

Situations

1.
 - A. When is your son's birthday?
 - B. My son's birthday is next week.
 - A. How old is he?
 - B. Five. He'll be six in a week.
 - A. Six years? He's big!
 - B. Yes, older than my daughter by three years.

2.
 - A. What are you doing?
 - B. I have to go to the office.
 - A. Really?
 - B. Yes, I have to see someone ('one') there.
 - A. What time will he come?
 - B. Soon. I must excuse myself.
 - A. Go ahead.

3.
 - A. Do we have to take the car?
 - B. No. I think it's not necessary.
 - A. Can we go this way ('from here')?
 - B. Of course, that's a good street. It goes to the post office and near my bank ('the bank belonging to me').
 - A. That's the most important thing.

LESSON 19

Dialogue

you (m) have	9indak	عندك
A. How many brothers and sisters do you (m) have?	9indak kam axx w uxt?	عندك كم اخ واخت؟
B. I have three brothers and three sisters.	9indi talaata axwaan wu talaata axwaat.	عندي ثلاثة اخوان وثلاثة اخوات
married	mitzawwij	متزوج
A. Are they married?	humma mitzawwijiin?	هم متزوجين؟
engaged	maxtuub	مخطوب
university	jaam9a	جامعة
B. One sister is married and one is engaged. My brothers are in the university.	waHda min axwaati mitzawwija wu waHda maxtuuba. axwaani fil-jaam9a.	واحدة من اخواني متزوجة وواحدة مخطوبة. اخواني في الجامعة.
father	waalid	والد
mother	waalida	والدة
present	mawjuud	موجود
A. Are your father and mother living? ('present')	waalidak wu waalidatak mawjuudiin?	والدك ووالدتك موجودين؟
B. Yes.	iiwa.	ايوه.

Structure Sentences

1. I was married a year ago.	atzawwajt gabl sana.	اتزوجت قبل سنة.
2. She has been married since last year. ('is married')	hiyya mitzawwija min al-9aam al-maaḍi.	هي متزوجة من العام الماضي.
3. He arrived the day before yesterday.	waṣal awwal ams.	وصل اول امس.
4. He is not alive.	huwwa muu 9aayis.	هو مو عايش.

Grammatical Notes

1. /9ind/ is a preposition usually translated into English as the verb 'to have'. When used in this way, it takes pronoun endings:

9indaha fuluus.
ma 9indahum šayy.

She has money.
They don't have anything.

/9ind/ may also mean 'at the home of' (used like "chez" in French):

ruḥt 9ind aḥmad.
jaa 9indi mit'axxir.
ta9aal 9indana.

I went to Ahmad's house.
He came to my house late.
Come to our house.

2. /mitzawwij/, 'married', is an example of a "passive participle" in Arabic. This is a predictable pattern and functions like an adjective; it refers to a "state resulting from the action of a verb", and is derived from transitive verbs. Examples:

Verbs like /katab/:
Pattern: maC₁C₂uuC₃

katab	maktuub	written
xaṭab	maxṭuub	engaged
wajad	mawjuud	present ('found')

Other Verbs:

Pattern: /mi/ or /mu/ + imperfect verb stem

(yitzawwij)	mitzawwij
(yit'akkid)	mit'akkid

The feminine form is predictable, and the plural form is almost always the suffix /-iin/.

Not all verbs can have a passive participle; some have another passive form (Lesson 37).

3. /waalid/ and /waalida/ are honorific terms for 'father' and 'mother'. They are frequently used when referring to parents, as a sign of respect.

4. To express 'last' or past time, the word /maaḍi/, 'past', is used. It is declined to agree in gender with the noun it modifies:

al-usbuu9	al-maaḍi	last week
aṣ-ṣahar	al-maaḍi	last month
as-sana l-	maaḍiya	last year
yoom ar-rabuu9	al-maaḍi	last Wednesday

5. /min/, 'from', is also used to mean 'since' (cf. Structure Sentence 2).

6. The use of /mawjuud/ to mean 'living' or 'present' is idiomatic; more precise is the word /9aayiṣ/ (/9aayṣa/, /9aayṣiin/), 'alive'.

7. /awwal ams/, 'the day before yesterday', is an idiomatic expression.

Vocabulary Notes

Regular Pattern

mawjuud	present, found	موجود
mawluud	born	مولود
maxṭuub	engaged	مخطوب
maktuub	written	مكتوب
mafhuum	understood	مفهوم
ma9muul	done	معمول
maṣkuur	thanked	مشكور
maftuuH	opened	مفتوح
magfuul	closed	مقفول
ma9ruuf	known	معروف
mabsuut	pleased	مبسوط
maHbuub	beloved	محبوب
ma9guul	reasonable	معقول
mabruuk	blessed	مبروك
maHduud	limited	محدود

Other Pattern

mit'axxir
mit'akkid
mitzawwij
musta9mal

late ('delayed')
certain
married
used

متأخر
متأكد
متزوج
مستعمل

atzawwaj, yitzawwij
at'akkad, yit'akkid

get married
be certain

اتزوج
اتأكد

jaam9a, -aat

university

جامعة -ات

Drills

1. Are they married?

humma mitzawwijin?

هم متزوجين؟

Substitute:

inti
axuuk
intu
inta

انت
اخوك
انتو
انت

2. Given the verb in the perfect tense, using the passive participle:

Example: gafal al-baab. → al-baab magfuul.
Continue:

قفل الباب ← الباب مقفول

katab ad-dars.
fihim al-jumla.
9amal haada.
9irif al-beet.

كتب الدرس
فهم الجملة
عمل هادا
عرف البيت

3. My sister is engaged.

uxti max9uuba.

اختي مخطوبة

Substitute:

married
late
my father
present
alive
my mother
happy
certain

4. This is understood.

haada mafhuum.

هادا مفهوم

Substitute:

well-known ('known')
written
used
reasonable
closed
done
opened

5. I was married a year ago. atzawwajt gabl sana.

اتزوجت قبل سنة

Substitute:

they
two weeks ago
she
my friend (m)
three months ago
we
years ago
he
I
a year ago

6. She has been married
since last year.

hiyya mitzawwija min
al-9aam al-maaqi.

هي متزوجة من العام
الماضي.

Substitute:

last month
last Saturday
they
last week
he
last Thursday
we
my sister
I
last year
she

7. Let's go to my house.

niruuH 9indi.

نروح عندي.

Substitute:

to his house
to Ahmad's house
to our house
to my sister's house
to their house
to my father's house

Situations

1.
 - A. Have you heard of this book?
(literally, 'Do you know this book?')
 - B. Yes, it's well known ('known'). It was written long ago.
 - A. I want to buy it.
 - B. It's not necessary. You can take it from me.
 - A. When should I bring it?
(literally, 'When do I bring it?')
 - B. Later, after a month or two.
2.
 - A. Is your brother married?
 - B. No, he'll be married next week.
 - A. Whom will he marry?
 - B. Abdel-Rahman's daughter. She's very young, 16 years old.
 - A. Really? Congratulations.
 - B. Thanks. (response)

3.
A. Did you go to the university today?
B. Yes, I gave them money.
A. Is the university expensive?
B. Not [too] expensive. Reasonable.
A. I want to go to the university, too.
B. When you are older, if God wills.

LESSON 20

Review last nine dialogues.

Supplementary Drills

1. I want to buy those. abgha astari hadool. ابغى اشترى هذول.

Substitute:

take money from him
get married soon
go to the airport
turn left from there
speak French
cross the bridge
get something ('thing') cheaper
spend less money
use their car
see the best room
greet her

(Repeat, using 'he', 'she', 'they', 'we'.)

2. Please go early. min faḍlak, ruuH badri. من فضلك روح بدري.

Substitute:

bring a small one (m)
turn behind the building
talk with those foreigners
tell him "it doesn't matter"
take them to the airport
ask at ('in') the university
give me five piastres
come a little early

(Repeat, using feminine and plural forms)

3. Who lives in this house? miin saakin fi haada l-beet? مين ساكن في هادا البيت؟

Substitute:

is married, of your brothers?
gave him the best price?
went for her sake?
wrote to the army?
took the pen from him?
said today is my birthday?
lives at the end of the street?
went months ago?
was born (literally, 'is born') in 1955?

Questions

miin Haḍratak?
inta mitzawwij?
axwaanak mitzawwiijin?
as-saa9a kam?
keef Haalak?
inta feen saakin?
kam 9umrak?
kam 9umr ṣaaHbak?

مين حضرتك؟
انت متزوج؟
اخوانك متزوجين؟
الساعة كم؟
كيف حالك؟
انت فين ساكن؟
كم عمرك؟
كم عمر صاحبك؟

waalidak wu waalidatak mawjuudiin?
sayyaaratak ghaalya?
saa9atak kallafat kam?

والدك ووالدتك موجودين؟
سيارتك غالية؟
ساعتك كلفت كم؟

Narratives

Say in Arabic:

1. I went to the bank and took a little money. Then I bought my books for school. I like my school. I think it is the biggest and best in the city. There is no school better than this [one].

(Repeat, using different person forms.)

2. I am not sure that I know where the Americans live here, but I am sure there are many. I arrived only last month, and I am still new here. My house is big and nice, and my wife and children like Jidda. We want to go to Taif and Riyadh soon, I hope. People say that the cities are far. Maybe later we will go to Dhahran and other cities in Arabia.

LESSON 21

Dialogue

(In a taxi)

- | | | |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| free (unoccupied) | faaḍi | فاضي |
| A. Are you (m) free? | inta faaḍi? | انت فاضي؟ |
| B. Yes, get in. | iiwa, atfaḍḍal. | ايوه، اتفضل. |
| A. How much from here to the embassy? | b-kam min hina lis-safaara? | بكم من هنا للسفارة؟ |
| B. Five riyals. | xamsa riyaal. | خمسة ريال. |
| enough | kifaaya | كفاية |
| A. Unbelievable! Three is enough. | muu ma9guul! talaata kifaaya. | مو معقول! ثلاثة كفاية. |
| let be (command) | xalli | خلي |
| B. OK, let it be three. | ṭayyib, xalliiha talaata. | طيب، خليه ثلاثة. |
| in a hurry | mista9jil | مستعجل |
| drive (command) | suug | سوق |
| carefully ('at your leisure') | 9ala mahlak | على مهلك |
| A. I'm in a hurry, but drive carefully. | ana mista9jil ṣwayya laakin suug 9ala mahlak. | انا مستعجل شويه لكن سوق على مهلك. |
| B. OK. | in ṣaa' allaah. | ان شاء الله. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I don't have enough money. | ma 9indi fuluus kifaaya. | ما عندي فلوس كفاية. |
| 2. Drive slowly. | suug b-ṣweeṣ. | سوق بشويش. |
| 3. The taxi driver drove fast. | sawwaag at-taksi saag b-sur9a. | سواق التاكسي ساق بسرعة. |
| 4. Do you (m) know how to drive well? | ti9rif tisuug kwayyis? | تعرف تسوق كويس؟ |
| 5. He works as a driver. | huwwa yiṣtaghil sawwaag. | هو يشتغل سواق. |
| 6. He has two drivers. | 9indu itneen sawwaagiin. | عنده اثنين سواقين. |
| 7. We are in a hurry. | iHna mista9jiliin. | احنا مستعجلين. |
| 8. You must hurry. | laazim tista9jil. | لازم تستعجل. |

Grammatical Notes

1. /kifaaya/, 'enough', is used after a noun, and does not change form:

talaata kifaaya.	Three are enough.
fuluus kifaaya	enough money

2. Adverbs may be formed with particle words prefixed to a noun:

9ala mahlak	carefully ('at your (m) leisure')
9ala mahlik	('at your (f) leisure')
9ala mahlakum	('at your (p) leisure')
9ala mahli	('at my leisure')
9ala mahlana	('at our leisure')

b-sweeš	slowly ('with slowness')
b-sur9a	quickly ('with speed')

Other adverbs are simply the masculine adjective:

titkallam 9arabi You speak Arabic well.
kwayyis.

šuftu katiir. I saw him a lot ('much').

3. /aštaghal, yištaghil/, 'to work', may be used with a noun to mean 'to work as':

huwwa yištaghil sawwaag. He works [as] a driver.

4. Some nouns, especially nouns indicating profession or nationality, are not made dual with the /-een/ suffix. They are used with /itneen/ + the plural form:

itneen sawwaagiin	two drivers
itneen ajaanib	two foreigners
itneen su9uudiyiin	two Saudis
itneen amrikaan	two Americans

Vocabulary Notes

saag, yisuug (sugt)	drive
ištaghal, yištaghil	work
asta9jal, yista9jil	hurry
sawwaag, -iin	driver

سائق يسوق (سقت)
اشتغل يشتغل
استمجل يستمجل
سواق بين

mista9jil, -a, -iin	in a hurry
faaḍi, -ya, -iin	free, unoccupied

مستمجل - بين
فاضي - بين

Drills

1. How much from here to the embassy? b-kam min hina lis-safaara?

بكم من هنا للسفارة؟

Substitute:

the bank
the American school
Mecca Road
the Foreign Ministry
the airport
the American consulate
the post office
the embassy

2. I am in a hurry. ana mista9jil [√]swayya. أنا مستعجل شويه

Substitute:

we
she
you (m)
they
he
you (f)
I
you (p)

3. You (m) must hurry. inta laazim tista9jil. انت لازم تستعجل

Substitute:

we
you (f)
she
you (p)
I
all of us
he

4. I don't have enough money. ma 9indi fuluus kifaaya. ما عندي فلوس كفاية

Substitute:

books
friends
chairs
clocks
children

5. Drive slowly. suug b-[√]swees. سوق بشويش

Substitute:

quickly
behind that car
carefully
my car

6. Do you know how to drive well? ti9rif tisuug kwayyis? تعرف تسوق كويس

Substitute:

she
they
you (f)
he
you (p)
your brother
the driver

Situations

1.
 - A. Taxi! Are you free?
 - B. Yes, get in.
 - A. How much from here to the bank?
 - B. Only six riyals.
 - A. OK, let's go. But drive carefully; we're not in a hurry.
2.
 - A. I want to go buy something. Can you take me in the car?
 - B. I'm sorry, I'm not free now.
 - A. But I don't drive, and there aren't any taxis.
 - B. Why do you want to go?
 - A. Today is my son's birthday. I have to buy him something.
 - B. Ask the driver.
 - A. Yes, I'm sure he'll go.

Cultural Notes

1. Since taxis do not have meters, it is customary to discuss the price of a trip before getting in.

LESSON 22

Dialogue

waiting	mistanni	مستني
A. Have you been waiting here long? ('To you long waiting here?')	lak katiir mistanni hina?	لك كثير مستني هنا؟
B. I've been waiting here 20 minutes. ('It has been to me...')	liyya mistanni hina tult saa9a.	لي مستني هنا ثلث ساعة
sorry	mit'assif	متأسف
A. I'm sorry.	ana mit'assif.	انا متأسف
B. It's OK. It's nothing.	ma9alee9. ma fii 9ayy.	معلش ما فيه شي
you (m) drink	ti9rab	تشرب
cup	finjaan	فنجان
coffee	gahwa	قهوة
A. Would you like to drink a cup of coffee?	tiHubb ti9rab finjaan gahwa?	تحب تشرب فنجان قهوة؟
cold	baarid	بارد
B. Something cold, please.	9ayy baarid, min fa9lak.	شي بارد من فضلك

Structure Sentences

1. We are waiting for them.	iHna mistanniilhum.	احنا مستنينهم
2. I am waiting for him.	ana mintaziru.	انا منتظره
3. He already went.	giidu raaH.	قده راح
4. I am extremely sorry.	ana mit'assif bil-Heel.	انا متأسف بالحيل
5. Would you (f) like to come?	inti tiHubbi tiji?	انت تحبي تجي؟
6. We drank a glass of tea with milk.	9iribna kubbaayat 9aahi bil-Haliib.	شرينا كوباية شاي بالحليب
7. I heard that these things are cheap.	simi9t innu l-Hajaat haadi raxi9a.	سمعت انه الحاجات هادي رخيصة
8. Why is he returning?	huwwa lees9 raa9i9?	هو ليش راجع؟
9. We were sleeping.	kunna naaymiin.	كنا نايمين
10. I am not able.	ana mana gaadir.	انا ما قادر
11. I heard about you (m).	ana simi9t 9annak.	انا سمعت عنك

Grammatical Notes

1. /mistanni/ and /raaji9/ are examples of the "active participle" in Arabic. The active participle has a predictable pattern for each type of verb. It is usually translated like a verb in English, but it is in fact a noun in Arabic, declined for gender and number. If the word ends in a consonant, it takes the regular feminine ending /-a/, and the /-iin/ suffix for plural. If it ends in a vowel like /-i/, it takes /-yya/ for feminine and /-iin/ for plural. For example:

raaji9	returning (m)
raaj9a	returning (f)
raaj9iin	returning (p)

Note that the /i/ is dropped before adding the feminine and plural endings.

mistanni	waiting (m)
mistanniyya	waiting (f)
mistanniin	waiting (p)

The active participle is used to express the "actor", or the "doer" of an action. It is most often used with verbs of motion (to describe going, coming, returning, etc.) and verbs of "temporary state", mental or physical (understanding, knowing, sitting, standing). Sometimes the active participle is translated as the present perfect tense in English ('have seen', 'have done'), and whether this is meant will depend on the context of the sentence.

The most easily recognized pattern is that of regular verbs like /katab/:

C₁aaC₂iC₃

Examples:

faahim	'understanding'
ana faahim.	I understand. ('I am understanding')
humma mahum faahmiin	They do not understand the
al-jumla.	sentence. ('They are not understanding')
9aarif	'knowing'
ana mana 9aarif	I don't know how to go.
keef aruuH.	('I am not knowing')
iHna 9aarfiin innu	We know that he came.
jaa.	('We are knowing')
raayiH	'going'
mita huwwa raayiH?	When is he going?
jayy	'coming'
ana jayy daHHiin.	I am coming now.

Note the difference between the above sentences which describe (1) a temporary state or (2) a motion, and the sentences below which use a verb to describe (1) a permanent state or ability or (2) a habitual action:

afham ingiliizi	I understand English.
a9rif aktub kwayyis.	I know how to write well.
yiruuH al-madrasa badri.*	He goes to school early.
niji hina katiir.*	We come here often ('much').

*Some speakers use the prefix /b-/ before verbs when expressing habitual or recurring action:

b-yiruuH
b-niji

Sometimes speakers of Arabic use both the active participle and the imperfect verb for certain expressions which do not clearly fit into one category or the other. The sentences may differ slightly in connotation.

9aarifu kwayyis. I know him well. (I know
all about him).
a9rifu kwayyis. (Now) I know him well.

When used in the sense of present perfect, the phrase is often used with a form of the word /giid-/; 'already', (see note below) or other time words which give an indication that the sentence refers to recently-completed past time.

huwwa giidu šaarib He has already drunk tea.
šaaḥi.
huwwa waaṣil min He [has] arrived long ago.
zamaan.

Note that "hollow" verbs add /y/ in the active participle form:

raayih 'going'
šaayif 'seeing'

Other types of verbs form the active participle by adding the prefix /m-/ or /mi-/ to the imperfect tense "base" (minus the person prefix):

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Active Participle</u>
yisawwi	misawwi 'doing, having done'
yi9addi	mi9addi 'crossing, having crossed'
yintaṣir	mintaṣir 'waiting'

Some of these verbs also change the final vowel:

yistanna mistanni 'waiting'

The active participle of a transitive verb may be used with a direct object (cf. Structure Sentences 1 and 2).

2. /giid-/ is used with pronoun endings and means 'already':

giidu	he already	قيدِه
giidaha	she already	قيدِها
giidahum	they already	قيدِهم
giidak	you (m) already	قيدُكَ
giidik	you (f) already	قيدُكِ
giidakum	you (p) already	قيدُكم
giidi	I already	قيدِي
giidana	we already	قيدِنا

It is used before verbs:

giidu raaH. He already went.
giidi šuftu. I already saw him.

3. More time expressions:

tult saa9a one-third of an hour
rub9 saa9a one-quarter of an hour

nuṣṣ saa9a	one-half hour
nuṣṣ dagiiga	one-half minute
nuṣṣ saaniya	one-half second (etc.)

4. /Haaaja, Haajaat/ is another way of saying 'thing'. It alternates with /ṣayy/; the latter is usually preferred and is more classical.
5. /mintazir/, 'waiting', is used as often as /mistanni/. It is more classical.
6. /bil-Heel/, 'very much, extremely', is equivalent to /bil-marra/, and is more often used in the Najd.
7. Nouns which refer to containers or amounts are used in a construct phrase:

finjaan gahwa	a cup of coffee
kubbaayat ṣaahi	a glass of tea
talaata kiilu ṣaahi	three kilos of tea

8. /b-/ is used to mean 'with' when discussing ingredients of food or drink:

gahwa bil-Haliib	coffee with milk
ṣaahi b-sukkar	tea with sugar
ṣaahi bil-leemuun	tea with lemon

9. The verbs /Habb, yiHubb/, 'to like', and /gidir, yigdar/, 'to be able', are used as helping verbs with other verbs in a phrase:

tiHubb tiṣrab	Would you (m) like to
finjaan gahwa?	drink a cup of coffee?
tiHubbi tiji?	Would you (f) like to come?
gidir yiji badri.	He was able to come early.
ma gidirt atkallam.	I was not able to talk.

Vocabulary Notes

Active Participles

(Translations indicate the most likely usage for each word; not all active participles are used in all possible ways.)

(regular)

saakin	is residing	ساكن
waṣil	has arrived	واصل
daaris	has studied	دارس
kaatib	has written	كاتب
ḡaamil	is working	عامل
faatiH	has opened	فاتح
gaafil	has closed	قافل
saa'il	is asking	سائل
ṣaarif	has spent	صارف
raaji9	is returning	راجع
gaadir	is able	قادر
ṣaarib	has drunk	شارب
saami9	is hearing, has heard	سامع

(hollow)

gaayil	has said	قائل
raayiH	is going	رائي
ṣaayif	is seeing	صائف
naayim	is sleeping	نائيم
jaayib	is bringing	جائيب
saayib	has left behind	سائيب
ṣaayil	is carrying	صائيل

(other)		
maaṣi	is leaving	ماشي
middi	has given	مدي
mitkallam	has spoken	متكلم
misawwi	has done	مستوي
mi9addi	has crossed	معدّي
mintazir	is waiting	منتظر
mistanni	is waiting	مستني
muwaafiq	is in agreement	موافق

Verbs

ṣirib, yiṣrab	drink	شرب يشرب
riji9, yirja9	return	رجع يرجع
gidir, yigdar	be able	قدّر يقدر
simi9, yisma9	hear	سمع يسمع
astanna, yistanna	wait	استنى يستنى (لاستنهت)
(astanneet)		
antaṣar, yintaṣir	wait	انتظر ينتظر
waafag, yiwaafiq	agree	وافق يوافق

Other Words

9aṣiir	juice	عصير
Haliib	milk	حليب
moyya	water	ماء
qahwa	coffee	قهوة
ṣaahi	tea	شاهي
leemuun	lemon	ليمون
sukkar	sugar	سكر
finjaan, fanaajiin	cup	فنجان فناجين
kubbaaya, -aat	drinking glass	كوباءة -ات
mit'assif, -a, -iin	sorry	متأسف -ين
leeṣ	why?	لبش

Drills

1. Have you been waiting here long? lak katiir mistanni hina? لك كثير مستني هنا؟

Substitute:

you (p)
she
they
he
you (f)

2. I have been here 20' minutes. liyya hina tult saa9a. لي هنا ثلث ساعة.

Substitute:

1/4 hour
1/2 hour
we
1/2 year
he
1/2 minute
1/2 second
she
1/3 hour
I

3. Would you like to
drink a cup of
coffee?

tiHubb tiṣrab finjaan
gahwa?

نحب نشرب فنجان قهوة؟

Substitute:

you (f)
something cold
they
he
glass of tea
we
she
glass of water
you (m)
juice
we
you (p)
milk
she

4. I am waiting for him.

ana mintaziru.

انا منتظره .

Substitute:

her
them
we
him
she
me
us

5. Given the cue sentence in the perfect tense, change it to the active participle form.

Example:

huwwa raah. —→ huwwa raayiH.

هو راح . ← هو رايح .

Continue:

ana astanneet.
ṣiribna ṣaahi.
miin sa'al as-su'aal?
huwwa ma gidir yiruuH.
jaabat sayyaaratha.
ana ṣilt Haajaat katiir.
miṣiina.
al-walad 9adda ṣ-ṣaari9.
huwwa waafag.
9amal fi ṣarikat axuu.
mita waṣalt?
ma ṣaraf fuluus katiir.
simi9tak.
saab al-kutub 9aṭ-ṭarabiiza.

انا استنيت
شربنا شاي.
مين سأل السؤال؟
هو ما يقدر يروح.
جابت سيارتها.
انا شلت حاجات كثير.
مشينا.
الولد عدى الشارع.
هو وافق.
عمل في شركة اخوه.
متا وصلت؟
ما صرف فلوس كثير.
سمعتك.
ساب الكتب عالطريزة.

6. I am sorry.

ana mit'assif.

انا متأسف

Substitute:

we
she
he
they
returning
going
I
she
sleeping
he
was sleeping
we
they
see ('are seeing')
he
do you (f) see?
agree?
you (p)
understand?

7. We have been waiting for ihna mistanniinhum
them for a long time. min zamaan.

اَحْنا مُسْتَنِيْنُهُم
مِنْ زَمَانٍ

Substitute:

waiting for him
have seen him
have seen them
I
have seen her
have written it (f)
we
she
has written it (m)
has drunk it (m)
he
has opened it
has opened them
we
have opened it (m)

8. Why is he returning?

huwwa lees^v raaji9?

هو لیشر راجع؟

Substitute:

going
they
not able
she
you (m)
sleeping
you (f)
he
coming
they
she
leaving that (m)
you (m)
you (p)

returning
we
you (m)
he

Situations

1.
 - A. Would you like to drink coffee?
 - B. No, I have to go to my brother's house. He is waiting for me.
 - A. Are you returning soon?
 - B. After about half an hour, if God wills.
2.
 - A. Where do you live?
 - B. My house is at the end of this street, on the right.
 - A. My friends lived in that house, but I didn't see it.
 - B. Maybe you can see it from here.
 - A. No, I can't see anything.
 - B. Come over later.
 - A. OK, maybe I can.
3.
 - A. What are you carrying?
 - B. Only some old books. I just bought them yesterday. With your permission, may I leave them in that room?
 - A. I've given that room to Ahmad, but I'm sure it's OK.
 - B. When will he be back?
 - A. In half an hour or less. I'll tell him that the books are yours.
 - B. Thanks.

Cultural Notes

1. It is considered poor manners to neglect serving a guest something to drink, in a home or office, even during a short visit. You should always accept something, even if you only taste it.
2. Tea is preferred in glasses throughout the Arab world.

LESSON 23

Dialogue

- A. Where are you (m) going? feen raayih? فين رايع؟
 appointment maw9ad موعد
 minister waziir وزير
- B. I have an appointment with the Minister of Finance. 9indi maw9ad ma9a waziir al-maaliyya. عندي موعد مع وزير المالية.
- A. At the Finance Ministry? fi wizaarat al-maaliyya? في وزارة المالية؟
 hotel fundug فندق
 sea baHr بحر
 red aHmar احمر
 because li'ann لأن
 official mas'uul مسؤول
 all kull كل
 staying naazil نازل
- B. No, at the Red Sea Hotel, because all the officials are staying there. la', fi fundug al-baHr al-aHmar, li'ann al-mas'uuliin kullahum naazliin hinaak. لا، في فندق البحر الأحمر، لأن المسؤولين كلهم نازلين هناك.
- who, which alli ألي
 sitting jaalis جالس
 in the morning fiṣ-ṣubuH في الصبح
- A. Those who were sitting in the office this morning? humma alli kaanu jaalsiin fil-maktab fiṣ-ṣubuH? هم الي كانوا جالسين في المكتب في الصبح؟
- B. Yes, the ones which you saw [them]. iiwa, humma n-naas alli inta suftahum. ايوه، هم الناس الي انت شفتهم.

Structure Sentences

1. He arrived on time. waṣal fil-maw9ad. وصل في الموعد.
2. He arrived in the evening. waṣal fil-masa. وصل في المساء.
3. He slept because he is tired. naam li'annu ta9baan. نام لأنه تعب.
4. [It is] you who are responsible. inta alli mas'uul. انت الي مسؤول.

- | | | |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|
| 5. We all stayed in a big hotel. | kullana nazalina fi fundug kabiir. | كلنا نزلنا في فندق كبير |
| 6. Did he go upstairs or downstairs? | ṭili9 foog walla nazal taHat? | ما لم يذهب ولا نزل؟ |
| 7. Who is the man who is standing there? | miin ar-rijjaal alli waagif hinaak? | من الرجال الذي واقف هناك؟ |
| 8. I want the suitcase which I bought yesterday. | abgha š-šanṭa alli aštareetaha ams. | أبغى الشنطة التي اشتريتها أمس |
| 9. Give me all the things which you took from me. | addiini kull al-Haaṣjaat alli axadtahum min 9indi. | أعطني كل الحاجات التي أخذتهم من عندي |
| 10. He was sitting there. | kaan gaa9id hinaak. | كان قاعد هناك |

Grammatical Notes

1. /li'ann/ means 'because', and may be used alone or with pronoun suffixes:

li'aan al-mas'uuliin kullahum naazliin hinaak.	because all the officials are staying there
naam li'annu ta9baan.	He slept because he was tired.
laazim asta'zin li'anni at'axxart.	I must be leaving because I'm late.

2. /ṣubuḥ/ and /masa/ are the forms used ordinarily with reference to 'morning' and 'evening' (we saw these used for 'a.m.' and 'p.m.' in Lesson 12). /ṣabaḥ/ and /masaa/ are classical equivalents of these words, most often reserved for use in the expressions 'Good morning' and 'Good evening'.

3. /kull/, 'all', is used before a definite, plural noun. It may also be used with pronoun endings. (cf. Structure Sentences 5 and 9.)

kullahum	all of them
kullakum	all of you (p)
kullana	all of us
kull al-Haaṣjaat	all the things
kull an-naas	all the people

4. /mas'uul/, literally, 'responsible', is used idiomatically for 'official' (as a noun).

5. /nazal, yinzal/, literally, 'to descend', is used idiomatically to mean 'staying' in a hotel or home.

6. /alli/, 'which, who, whom', is not declined. It is used to introduce a phrase or clause, as a relative pronoun. If the clause includes a verb which takes a direct or indirect object, an object pronoun is also used. (This sounds redundant in English):

humma alli kaanu jaalsiin	they who were sitting
humma alli inta ṣuftahum	they whom you saw [them]

aš-šaṇṭa alli aštareetaha	the suitcase which I bought
ams	[it] yesterday
al-Haaṣaṭt alli	the things which I took [them]
axadtahum	
ar-riḡḡaal alli addeetu	the man to whom I gave [him]
fuluus	money

/alli/ may also be used to mean 'he who', 'those who', 'whoever':

alli yiHubb yiḡi yigulli. Whoever wants to come, tell me.

7. /fil-maw9ad/, 'on time' (literally, 'in the appointment'), is an idiom.

8. /foog/, 'above', and /taḡat/, 'below', can also be used to mean 'upstairs' and 'downstairs'.

9. /ga9ad, yug9ud/ is another common word meaning 'to sit'.

Vocabulary Notes

maw9ad, mawaa9iid	appointment	موعد مواعيد
šaṇṭa, šunaṭ	suitcase, briefcase, purse	سُنْطَة شَنْطَة
waziir, wuzara	minister (of government)	وزير وزراء
fundug, fanaadig	hotel	فُنْدُق فَنَادِق
mas'uul, -a, -iin	responsible, ('official')	مَسْئُول - يَنْ
nazal, yinzal	descend, ('stay')	نَزَلَ يَنْزِل
ṭili9, yiṭla9	ascend	طَلَعَ يَطْلَع
jalas, yijlis	sit	جَلَسَ يَجْلِس
ga9ad, yug9ud	sit	قَعَدَ يَقْعِد
wigif, yiwgaf	stand	وَقَفَ يَوْقِف

Drills

1. I have an appointment in 9indi maw9ad fi fundug al-
the Red Sea Hotel. baḡr al-aḡmar. عِنْدِي مَوْعِد فِي فُنْدُق
الْبَحْرِ الْأَحْمَرِ.

Substitute:

at the American Embassy
at the Ministry of Petroleum
with officials of the government
in the evening
at the airport
with the Minister of Communications
with my friends
at school
at the Ministry of Defense

2. You (m) must go down- laazim tinzal taḡat.
stairs. لَازِمُ تَنْزَلُ تَحْتَ.

Substitute:

go upstairs
sit here
stand beside the door
you (p)
bring your son too
come back in the evening

you (f)
see her soon
study English in school
go on time

3. Substitute the first or second half of the sentence, repeating the question and its answer:

Example: Why did he sleep? Because he's tired.

leeš huwwa naam? → li'annu ta9baan. لبيتر هو نام؟ ← لأنه تعباً.

Continue:

Why did he sleep?	Because he arrived late.
Why didn't he come?	Because he arrived late.
Why didn't she come?	Because she arrived late.
Why didn't she come?	Because she doesn't agree.
Why didn't you (m) go?	Because I don't agree.
Why didn't you (m) go?	Because I don't have much money.
Why didn't you (m) spend much?	Because I don't have much money.
Why didn't you (p) spend much?	Because we don't have much money.
Why didn't you (p) spend much?	Because we didn't like the things.
Why didn't he spend much?	Because he didn't like the things.

4. Who are they who were sitting there?

miin humma alli kaanu
jaalsiin hinaak?

مين هم اللي كانوا
جالسين هناك؟

Substitute:

who were standing there
who were staying in the hotel
who were returning
who were coming upstairs
who were going home
who were coming here
who were carrying the suitcases
who were sleeping in the room
who were responsible

5. They are the people whom you saw.

humma n-naas alli inta
šuftahum.

هم الناس اللي انت
شفتهم

Substitute:

whom you know
whom I brought in my car
whom I asked about
whom I gave money to
whom I greeted
whom I took home

6. I want the suitcase which I bought yesterday.

abgha š-šaṇṭa alli
aštareetaha ams.

ابغى الشنطة اللي
اشتريتها امس

Substitute:

which I saw yesterday
the table

the new chair
which he brought from the office
which my husband likes
the books
which you (m) are carrying
the coffee
which is in that cup
which you (m) can't drink

Situations

1.
A. Let's go see the man who arrived yesterday.
B. OK, in a couple hours.
A. Why can't you come now?
B. Because I have to sleep, I'm tired.
A. I'll come at 7:00.
B. Fine.
2.
A. Do you know Mr. Muhammad?
B. No, but I've heard about him.
A. He lives next to us.
B. I know that he is in the Ministry of Defense.
A. Yes, I'm not sure where exactly. In the minister's office, I think.
3.
A. Bring us coffee, please.
B. How many?
A. Four. And one tea with sugar.
B. Do you (f) want cream?
A. Of course. Then ('later') at 3:00 we have an appointment at the university.
Can you take us in the car?
B. Yes. When will you (p) return?
A. After about an hour, if God wills.

Dialogue

Grammatical Notes

1. /mawjuud/ (/mawjuuda/, /mawjuudiin/) may be used to mean 'present', 'in attendance'. Just as common is the use of /fii/ to mean 'present'. (cf. Structure Sentences 1 and 2.)
2. /taani/ may be used as an adverb to mean 'again'.
3. /ragam/, 'number', is the classical word; the borrowed word /nimra/ is often heard.
4. Telephone numbers are usually given in tens or hundreds, the first two and then the last three:

25875	xamsa wu 9iṣriin, tamanmiyya wu xamsa wu sab9iin
27416	sab9a wu 9iṣriin, arba9miyya wu siṭṭa9ṣ

If the number combinations are unusual, modifications may be made:

20005	9iṣriin alf wu xamsa
11002	iḥḍa9ṣ alf w itneen

If you use individual numbers, you will be understood.

5. The indirect object is usually suffixed to the verb. If there is no verb, the word /l-/ , 'to, for', is used with a pronoun as an independent word.

lu	to him, for him
laha	to her, for her
lahum	to them, for them
lak	to you (m), for you (m)
liki	to you (f), for you (f)
lakum	to you (p), for you (p)
liyya	to me, for me
lana	to us, for us

ل
ل
ل
ل
ل
ل
ل
ل

hadoo al-kutub lana	Those books are for <u>us</u> .
iḥna.	
lak katiir mistanni	Have you been waiting here
hina?	long?
liyya hina tult saa9a.	I've been here for 20 minutes.

/l-/ can be used with money to mean 'is owed to'. Owing may be expressed with /9ind/ or /9ala/:

liyya xamsa riyaa.	I am owed five riyals.
	('To me five riyals.')
liyya xamsa riyaa	You owe me five riyals.
9indak.	('To me five riyals
	with you.')
9aleena fuluus	We owe a lot of money.
katiir.	('On us a lot of money.')

6. /risaala/, 'message', may also mean 'note' or 'letter'; it is the classical word. However, the word /jawaab/ (literally, 'answer') is usually used in this dialect to mean 'letter'.

Vocabulary Notes

maṣruu9, maṣaarii9
 risaala, rasaayil
 jawaab, -aat
 ragam, arqaam
 nimra, nimar
 tilifoon, -aat

project
 note, message
 letter
 number
 number
 telephone

مشروع
 رسالة
 جواب -ات
 رقم
 رقم
 تليفون -ات

Hisaab, -aat
 ṣughul, aṣghaal
 taṣmiim, -aat
 xuṭṭa, xuṭaṭ
 ṭalab, -aat
 muṣtarawaat
 mubii9aat
 ittifaag, -aat

account
 work
 design
 plan
 order
 purchases
 sales
 agreement

حساب -ات
 شغل اشغال
 تصميم -ات
 خطة
 طلب -ات
 مشتريات
 مبيعات
 اتفاق -ات

xaraj, yuxruj
 daxal, yudxul

go out
 enter

خرج
 دخل بدخل

Drills

1. May I leave him a message?

mumkin asiblu risaala?

يمكن اسيله رسالة؟

Substitute:

bring you (m) coffee?
 carry this suitcase for you?
 make an appointment for you (p)?
 write her a letter?
 do anything for you (f)?
 give them the money?
 buy you (m) a glass of tea?

2. Is this for you (m)?

haada lak?

هالدا لك؟

Substitute:

for us
 for you (p)
 for me
 for her
 for you (f)
 for them

3. I owe you money.

lak fuluus 9indi.

لك فلوس عندي.

Substitute:

she owes you
 they owe you
 they owe us
 you (m) owe us
 she owes us
 she owes her
 I owe her
 I owe them

4. My telephone number is 25875. ragam tilifooni xamsa wu 9iṣriin, wu tamanmiyya xamsa wu sab9iin. رقم تليفوني خمسة وعشرين وثمانية خمسة وسبعين

Sbustitute:

63957
21020
29000
65338
62117
27504

5. He wants to talk about our project. yibgha yitkallam 9an maṣruu9ana. ينبغي يتكلم عن مشروعنا

Substitute:

I
our account
our plan
our work
we
our agreement
our design
our order
our purchases
he
his project
his sales

6. When did he go out? mita xaraj? متى خرج؟

Substitute:

she
they
entered
you (f)
he
you (p)
went out
you (m)

Situations

1.
 - A. Where is Mr. Sharif?
 - B. He went out half an hour ago. He said he'll return soon.
 - A. May I wait?
 - B. Of course. Can I get you something?
 - A. Yes, either coffee or tea.
2.
 - A. I want to see the plan.
 - B. Which plan?
 - A. The design of the new building.
 - B. Mr. Jones took it and left.
 - A. Tell him that I was here. I'll leave you my telephone number.
 - B. Where will you be?
 - A. At the hotel, after 3:00.

3.
A. I owe you money. How much?
B. About 30 riyals, I'm not sure. I forgot.
A. Take 30 now, and I'll see the account again later.
B. OK, thanks. Good night.
A. Good night.

LESSON 25

Dialogue

(On the telephone)

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| A. Hello. Who are you, sir? | aleo. miin Haḡratak? | آلو. مين حضرتك؟ |
| B. This is Mr. Jones. Is Mahmoud there? | ana mistar Jones. maHmuud fii? | انا مستر جونز محمود فيه؟ |
| if you please | law samaHt | لو سمحت |
| you (m) remain | xalliik | خليك |
| line | xaṭṭ | خط |
| A. Just a minute, please. Stay on the line. | dagiiga law samaHt. xalliik 9al-xaṭṭ. | دقيقة لو سمحت خليك عالخط. |
| C. Hello, this is Mahmoud. ('I am Mahmoud') | aleo. ana maHmuud. | آلو. انا محمود. |
| B. Hello Mahmoud. How are you? | ahlan maHmuud. keef Haalak? | اهلا محمود كيف حالك؟ |
| I tried | Haawalt | حاولت |
| I call you | akallimak | الكلمك |
| I found | lageet | لقيت |
| busy | maṣghuul | مشغول |
| C. Fine, thanks. I tried to call you and found the line busy. | ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah. ana Haawalt akallimak, wu lageet al-xaṭṭ maṣghuul. | طيب، الحمد لله أنا حاولت اكلمك ولقيت الخط مشغول. |
| director | mudiir | مدير |
| B. Maybe the director was using the telephone. | yimkin al-mudiir kaan b-yista9mil at-tilifoon. | يمكن المدير كان يستعمل التليفون. |
| C. When can I see you in the office? | mita agdar aṣuufak fil-maktab? | متا اقدر اشوفك في المكتب؟ |
| B. I'm free today in the afternoon. | ana faaḡi l-yoom ba9d aḡ-ḡuhur. | انا فاضي اليوم بعد الظهر. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. We tried to arrive early. | Haawalna niwṣal badri. | حاولنا نوصل بدري. |
| 2. We were writing letters. | kunna b-niktub jawaabaat. | كنا بنكتب جوابات. |
| 3. I was waiting there. | kunt mistanni hinaak. | كنت مستني هناك. |
| 4. You can find pretty things at his place (shop). | mumkin tilaagi Haajaat Hilwa 9indu. | يمكن تلاقي حاجات حلوة عنده. |

5. Someone called me on the telephone. waaHid kallamni bit-tilifoon. واحد كلمني بالتليفون.
6. Someone is talking. aHad b-yitkallam. احد بيتكلم.
7. Nobody answers. maHad yirudd. ما حد يرد.
8. Wrong number. an-nimra ghalaṭ. النمرة غلط.

Grammatical Notes

1. /Haawal, yiHaawil/, 'to try', is used as a helping verb with other verbs. This means 'try' in the sense of 'attempt'; /jarrah, yijarrib/ means 'try' in the sense of 'try out':

Haawalt akallimak. I tried to call you.
jarrahbt aṣ-ṣaahi. I tried the tea.

2. /kallam, yikallim/, 'to talk to', is used with a direct object:

Haawalt akallimak. I tried to talk to you (call you).
kallamni bit-tilifoon. Call me on the telephone.

Note that /atkallam/, 'to speak', is used with /ma9a/ before the object:

laazim atkallam ma9a I must talk to my friend.
ṣaaHbi.

3. /laga, yilaagi/, 'to find', is slightly irregular in the perfect tense because it is missing a root consonant:

Perfect

huwwa laga
hiyya laget
humma lagu

inta lageet
inti lageeti
intu lageetu

ana lageet
iHna lageena

Imperfect

yilaagi
tilaagi
yilaagu

tilaagi
tilaagi
tilaagu

alaagi
nilaagi

يلاقي
تلاقي
يلاقوا

تلاقي
تلاقي
تلاقوا

الاقى
نلاقى

لقي
لقت
لقوا

لقيت
لقيت
لقيتوا

نقيت
نقينا

4. /kaan/ may be used with an imperfect verb to form the "past progressive" tense, i.e., 'was doing':

al-mudiir kaan yista9mil The director was using the
at-tilifoon. telephone.
hiyya kaanat tiktub. She was writing.

5. /b-/ is prefixed to an imperfect verb when speaking of "continuous" or on-going action (it is optional):

huwwa b-yitkallam He is talking now.
daHHiin.
kaan b-yitkallam. He was talking.
kaan b-yista9mil He was using the telephone.
at-tilifoon.
hiyya b-tiktub jawaab. She is writing a letter.

This prefix is optionally used for habitual or recurring action (see page 110).

6. /aHad/ is the usual word for 'someone'; it has only one form. Sometimes you will hear /waaHid/ (/waHda/) used as well. (cf. Structure Sentences 5 and 6.)

Vocabulary Notes

mudiir, -iin*	director, manager, boss	مدیر -ین
mudiir maktab	appointments secretary (for a high official)	مدیر مکتب
musaa9id, -iin*	assistant	مساعد -ین
naayib, nuwaaab	deputy	نایب -ین
sikirteer, -iin*	secretary	سکرتر -ین
mušrif, -iin*	supervisor	مشرف -ین
muwazzaf, -iin*	employee	موظف -ین
aHad	someone	احد
maHad	nobody	محد
xaṭṭ, xuṭuut	line	خط خطوط
mašghuul, -iin	busy	مشغول -ین
xarbaan, -iin	out of order	خرابان -ین

*(The above nouns referring to employment titles can be made feminine by adding /-a/, and the plural /-iin/ would change to /-aat/.)

Drills

1. Stay on the line. xalliik 9al-xaṭṭ. خلیک عالخط.

Substitute:

(to a woman)
(to a group)

2. I tried to call you (m). Haawalt akallimak. حاولت الکلمک.

Substitute:

We tried to call you (m).
We tried to call them.
We tried to call all of you.
We tried to see all of you.
She tried to write to you (p).
She tried to write to us.
She tried to write to him.
She tried to call him on the telephone.
I tried to call him on the telephone.
I tried to answer him.
He tried to answer him.
They tried to answer him.

3. State the question, then answer it.

Example:

Did he talk to you (m)? Yes, he talked to me.
huwwa kallamak? → iiwa, kallamni.

هو کلمک؟ ← ایوه، کلمنی.

Continue:

Did she talk to you (m)? Yes, she talked to me.
 Did she talk to them? Yes, she talked to them.
 Did she talk to him? No, she did not talk to him.
 Did you (p) talk to him? Yes, we talked to him.
 Did you (f) talk to him? No, I did not talk to him.
 Did they talk to her? No, they did not talk to her.
 Did they talk to you (m)? Yes, they talked to me.

4. Did you (m) call him? kállamtu?

كلمته ؟

Repeat the question, and answer:

Yes, but I found the line busy.
 Yes, but nobody answered.
 Yes, but I waited a long time.
 Yes, but he wasn't there. (/mawjuud/).
 Yes, but he wasn't free.
 Yes, but I talked to his assistant.
 No, I forgot his number.
 No, the telephone is out of order.

5. The director was using the telephone. al-mudiir kaan b-yista9mil at-tilifoön.

المدير كان يستعمل التليفون.

Substitute:

was coming in*
 was going to the Ministry of Interior
 was writing a letter
 was talking to somebody
 was going out
 had to leave
 was sitting outside
 was buying expensive things

*Remember to use active participles where appropriate.

6. I must speak to the manager. laazim akallim al-mudiir.

لأنكم أكلّم المدير.

Substitute:

the employees
 the supervisor
 the secretary (f)
 the deputy
 the appointments secretary
 the assistant
 the minister's assistant

Situations

1.
 - A. Call him on the telephone.
 - B. I can't, the line is busy.
 - A. Try again.
 - B. Now nobody answers.

2.
A. I want to see the director.
B. I'm sorry, he's out.
A. Can I see his deputy?
B. Just a moment, I'll ask. No, he's not free now.
A. I'll leave him a message.
B. Go ahead.

3.
A. Where is the company president staying?
B. In the Red Sea Hotel.
A. Is it near here?
B. Not far. Take a taxi.
A. How much would it cost?
B. Only two riyals.

LESSON 26

Dialogue

(In an office)

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| A. Is Khalid here? | xaaliḍ hina? | خالد هنا؟ |
| B. Not yet. | lissa9. | ليس. |
| have him | xallii | خليه |
| as soon as | awwal-ma | اول ما |
| A. Have him call me as soon as he arrives. | xallii yikallimni awwal-ma yiwṣal. | خليه يكلمني اول ما يوصل. |
| very well; as you wish (literally 'ready') service | Haaḍir xidma | حاضر خدمة |
| B. Very well, any service. Where will you be? | Haaḍir, ayy xidma. feen Ha-tikuun? | حاضر، اي خدمة؟ فين حتكون؟ |
| until | ileen | الين |
| A. I'll be in the office until five o'clock. Then I'll go to the airport. | H-akuun fil-maktab ileen as-saa9a xamsa. ba9deen H-aruuH al-maṭaar. | حاكون في المكتب الين الساعة خمسة. بعدين خارج المطار. |
| B. Why? | leeṣ? | ليش؟ |
| traveling | misaafir | مسافر |
| airplane | ṭayyaara | طيارة |
| A. I'm going on the five o'clock plane. | ana misaafir 9ala ṭayyaarat as-saa9a xamsa, in 9aa' aḷḷaah. | انا مسافر على طيارة الساعة خمسة. ان شاء الله. |
| before | gabl-ma | قبلما |
| B. Maybe he will meet you here before you go. | yimkin huwwa yigaabilak hina gabl-ma timṣi. | يمكن هو يقابلك هنا قبلما تمشي. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. When you (m) arrive, tell me. | lamman tiwṣal, gulli. | لمن توصل قللي. |
| 2. He left without saying goodbye to them. | miṣi biduun-ma yisallim 9aleehum. | مشي بدون ما يسلم عليهم. |
| 3. I must see him before he leaves. | laazim aṣuufu gabl-ma yimṣi. | لازم اشوفه قبلما يمشي. |
| 4. We stood up after she entered. | wigifna ba9d-ma daxalat. | وقفنا بعدما دخلت. |

- | | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5. Every time I travel I forget something at home. | kull-ma asaafir ansa Haaja fil-beet. | كلما اسافر انسى
حاجة في البيت. |
| 6. We went to France last year. | saafarna faraansa s-sana l-maaḍya. | سافرنا فرانسما السنة
الماضية. |
| 7. They haven't come yet. | lissa9 ma joo. | لسمع ما جوا. |

Grammatical Notes

1. /xalla, yixalli/, 'to leave', 'to let', is used alone or as a helping verb. It has several translations in English, depending on context:

xallii.	Leave it [here].
xalliik 9al-xaṭṭ.	Stay on the line. ('Let you be on the line')
xalliik hina.	Stay here.
xalliiki 9indana.	Stay (f) at our house.
xalliium jaalsiin.	Let them stay seated.
xalliha talaata.	Let it be three (price).
xallii yimṣi.	Let him go. Have him go.
xalliium yiṣtaghilu.	Let them work. Make them work.

2. /awwal-ma/ and /gabl-ma/ are examples of a set of words which precede a verb and require /-ma/ before the verb (in this case, it is not a negative word):

awwal-ma yiwṣal	as soon as he arrives	اول ما يوصل
gabl-ma yimṣi	before he leaves	قبلما يمشي
ba9d-ma daxalat	after she entered	بعدما دخلت
biduun-ma yisallim	without greeting them	بدون ما يسلم عليهم
9aleehum		
kull-ma asaafir	whenever I travel	كلما اسافر
liHadd-ma yiji	until he comes	لحد ما يجي
ileen-ma yiji	until he returns	الينما يجي

Both /liHadd-ma/ and /ileen-ma/ mean 'until' and are used with verbs. They can be used with time expressions, in which case the suffix /-ma/ is dropped:

li-Hadd as-saa9a xamsa	until five o'clock
ileen as-saa9a xamsa	until five o'clock

3. Note that /liHadd-ma/ is an example of a word in which three consonants occur in a cluster. In a case where three or four consonants would occur together, a short vowel is inserted to break up the cluster. This is not written in the text, however, because it is not really part of the word; it merely facilitates pronunciation:

(actual pronunciation)

liHadd-ma	liHadd ⁱ -ma
ṣuft muḤammad	ṣuft ⁱ muḤammad
nuṣṣ saa9a	nuṣṣ ⁱ saa9a

4. /Haaḍir/, 'ready' is usually used as a response to an order.

5. /lamman/ is also used before verbs, and means 'when' as a subordinating conjunction (not a question):

lamman waṣalna	when we arrived
lamman ṣuftu	when I saw him

6. /lissa9/ may be used with a negative verb (see Structure Sentence 7) or alone, to mean 'not yet'. Remember that with any other predicate, it means 'still' (Lesson 12). In the case of /lissa9/, /ma/ is a negative word:

lissa9 ma raaH.	He hasn't gone yet.
lissa9 ma gaabaltu.	I haven't met him yet.

7. /saafar/, 'to travel', implies a long distance; otherwise, /raaH/ is used. /saafar/, like /raaH/, is used without a preposition:

saafarna faraansa.	We traveled to France.
--------------------	------------------------

Vocabulary Notes

ṭayyaara, -aat
xidma, xadamaat

airplane
service

طيارة -ات
خدمة خدمات

saafar, yisaafir

travel

سافر يسافر

xalla, yixalli
(xalleet)

let, leave

خلل يخلي (خلبت)

Drills

1. Have him call me.

xallii yikallimni.

خليه يكلمني

Substitute:

have her
have them
see me
see us
have him
come to us
come to him
return to him
return to me
give me money
have her
buy me coffee

2. Let him go.

xallii yimṣi.

خليه يمشي

Substitute:

travel
let her
let me
enter
let them
meet him
take the suitcases
let us
try
stand here a little while

3. Stay (m) here.

xalliik hina.

خليك هنا.

Substitute:

at my house
there
on the line
standing
at the airport
waiting until I arrive
downstairs

4. I'm going to travel
('traveling')
tomorrow.

ana misaafir bukra.

انا مسافر بكره.

Substitute:

we
were traveling last month
she
is traveling today
was traveling the day before yesterday
they
are traveling soon
are going overseas next week

5. When we arrive, tell me. lamman niwṣal, gulli.

لعمز نوصل قللي.

Substitute:

before we arrive
as soon as we arrive
as soon as they arrive
after they arrive
after you (m) arrive
before you (m) arrive
before she arrives
when she arrives
when you (p) arrive
as soon as you (p) arrive
as soon as you (f) arrive
every time you (f) arrive

6. They still haven't come. lissa9 ma joo.

لسع ما جوا.

Substitute:

seen her
I
called her
called my sister
gone to my sister's house
we
met the bank president
you (m)
talked to me about the proposal
spent the money
she
drunk the tea
he
written the letters
gone upstairs

7. He sat here until I met him. *jalas hina liHadd-ma gaabaltu.* جلس هنا لحد ما قابلته .

Substitute:

until I returned
until I brought him the books
until we sat beside him
until they stood up
until all of them went out
until the director came
until they closed the office

8. He went without seeing me. *raaH biduun-ma yisuuufani.* راح بدون ما يشوفني .

Substitute:

without greeting me
without saying anything
without asking about my health
without closing the door
without knowing why
without buying anything
without meeting his assistant
without drinking the tea

Situations

1.
 - A. On which plane are you (m) traveling?
 - B. The four o'clock plane.
 - A. Good. It's still early.
 - B. The man hasn't brought my suitcases yet. Where could they be?
(/feen yikuunu/)
 - A. Ask the clerk ('employee').
 - B. When he returns, I'll ask him.
2.
 - A. Excuse me, may I ask a question?
 - B. Of course, any service.
 - A. I don't know where my suitcases are.
 - B. After you entered the airport, where did you put them?
 - A. I gave them to a man who was standing beside me.
 - B. He took them to the airline company, I'm sure.
3.
 - A. Stay here until I return.
 - B. How long?
 - A. Not more than ten minutes.
 - B. I want to drink something.
 - A. You can buy coffee or tea over there.
 - B. Yes, of course. Thanks.

LESSON 27

Dialogue

- A. Do you speak Arabic? titkallam 9arabi? تتكلم عربي؟
 I study azaakir ازاكر
 every kull كل
- B. A little. I study an hour every day. šwayya. azaakir 9arabi شويه . ازاكر عربي
 saa9a kull yoom. ساعة كل يوم
 in order to 9ašaan عشان
- A. I'm studying English ana adrus ingiliizi 9ašaan انا ادرس انكليزي
 in order to go to asaafir amriika. عشان اسافر امريكا
 America.
 we practice nitmarran نتمرن
 together ma9a ba9d مع بعض
- B. We can practice mumkin nitmarran ma9a ba9d. ممكن نتمرن مع بعض
 together.
- A. Yes. You speak English iiwa. inta titkallam ايوه . انت تتكلم
 with me and I speak ingiliizi ma9aaya w ana انكليزي معاي
 Arabic with you. atkallam 9arabi ma9aak. وانا اتكلم عربي
 معاك.
 late afternoon il-9ašur العصر
- B. Can you come to my house tigdar tijiili fil-9ašur? تقدر تجيلي في العصر؟
 late this afternoon?
- A. Of course. tab9an. طبعا
 don't laa لا
 B. Don't forget. laa tinsa. لا تنس

Structure Sentences

1. We must study. laazim nizaakir. لازم نزاكر
 2. I studied for six months. darast sitta šuhuur. درست ستة شهور
 3. We saw each other šufna ba9d ams. شفنا بعض امس
 yesterday.
 4. Do you (m) agree inta muwaafiq ma9aaya? انت موافق معاي؟
 with me?
 5. You (m) must speak laazim titkallam ma9aa. لازم تتكلم معا
 with him.
 6. I have an appointment 9indi maw9ad ba9d عندي موعد بعد الظهر
 in the afternoon. ađ-đuhur.

7. Come (m) in order to see them. ta9aal 9aṣaan tiṣuufahum. تعال عشان تشوفهم.
8. He went because he has an appointment. raaH 9aṣaan 9indu maw9ad. راح عشان عنده موعد.

Grammatical Notes

1. /zaakar/ refers to 'study' in the sense of a momentary activity, i.e., studying at a desk. /daras/ refers to 'study' in the sense of pursuing an academic subject.

2. /kull/ may be used with indefinite words in the singular, to mean 'each' or 'every':

kull yoom	every day
kull sana	every year
kull waaHid	every one, everyone

Remember that this contrasts with its use meaning 'all' (Lesson 23).

3. /9aṣaan/ means 'in order to' when used with a verb.

adrus ingiliizi 9aṣaan I'm studying English in
asaafir amriika. order to go to America.

ta9aal 9aṣaan Come in order to see them.
tiṣuufahum.

It may also be used to mean 'because' (this is a borrowing from the Egyptian dialect; /li'ann/ is more common).

raaH 9aṣaan 9indu
maw9ad.

When used with a noun, /9aṣaan/ means 'for' (Lesson 16).

4. /ba9ḍ/ is usually translated 'each other' in English; it refers to a reciprocal action. It may be used as a direct or indirect object:

nitmarran ma9a ba9ḍ. We practice with each other.
ṣufna ba9ḍ. We saw each other.
katabna li ba9ḍ. We wrote to each other.

5. /ma9a/, when used with pronoun objects, has the base form /ma9aa-/:

ma9aa	with him	معا
ma9aaha	with her	معاها
ma9aahum	with them	معاهم
ma9aak	with you (m)	معاك
ma9aaki	with you (f)	معاكِ
ma9aakum	with you (p)	معاكم
ma9aaya	with me	معاي
ma9aana	with us	معانا

6. Times of the day are many in Saudi Arabia, because they may also refer to the five prayer times (these are starred):

al-fajr*	dawn	الفجر
aṣ-ṣubuḥ	morning	الصبح
aḍ-ḍuhur*	noon	الظهر
al-9aṣur*	late afternoon	المصر
al-maghrib*	sunset	المغرب
al-masa	evening	المساء
al-9iṣa*	evening	العشا
al-leel	night	الليل

The prayer-times are frequently used with /gabl/, 'before', and /ba9d/, 'after':

ba9d aḍ-ḍuhur	afternoon
gabl al-maghrib	before sunset (etc.)

7. The negative command in Arabic is formed by using the word /laa/ with the imperfect verb:

laa tiruuH.	Don't go (m).
laa tiruuHi.	Don't go (f).
laa tiruuHu.	Don't go (p).
laa tinsa.	Don't forget (m).
laa tikallimha.	Don't talk (m) to her.

8. /atmarran/, 'to practice', takes the preposition /9ala/ if followed by a noun:

laazim atmarran 9ala l-9arabi.	I must practice Arabic.
-----------------------------------	-------------------------

Vocabulary Notes

sawa*	together	سوا
zaakar, yizaakir	study	ذاكر يذاكر
nisi, yinsa (nisiit)	forget	نسي ينسى (نسييت)
atmarran, yitmarran	practice	اتمرن يتمرن

*This alternates with /ma9a ba9d/.

Drills

1. I study every day.	<u>azaakir kull yoom.</u>	ازاكر كل يوم
-----------------------	---------------------------	--------------

Substitute:

I go
every year
every week
I meet him
I see them
every ten minutes
every time
I talk to her
every night
every month

2. Come (m) in order to see them. ta9aal 9ašaan tišuuḥum. تعال عشان تشوفهم.

Substitute:

go (m)
in order to ask him
in order to bring money from the bank
in order to study
sit down (f)
in order to use the telephone
speak Arabic (p)
in order to practice with me
in order to understand the people

3. We saw each other yesterday. šufna ba9d ams. شفنا بعض امس.

Substitute:

went with each other
agreed with each other
they
met each other
sat beside each other
you (p)
talked to each other
worked together
greeted each other
we
studied in the university together
liked each other
wrote to each other

4. You (m) must speak English with me. laazim titkallam ingiliizi ma9aaya. لازم تتكلم انكليزي معاي.

Substitute:

with us
with him
with them
with her
with all of them
with the girls
with the Americans
with the secretary (f)

5. I have an appointment in the afternoon. 9indi maw9ad ba9d aḍ-ḍuhur. عندي موعد بعد الظهر.

Substitute:

after sunset
after dawn
before evening (prayer)
in the evening
at night
after mid-afternoon
in the morning
at noon

6. Don't forget (m).

laa tinsa.

لا تنسَ

Substitute:

(to a man):

go

come back early

tell her

(to a woman):

try

let him come

leave your purse here

(to a group)

sit here

go upstairs

bring your children

7. Given the verb in the perfect tense (m, f, or p), change the sentence to a negative command.

Example: raaH badri. → laa tiruuH badri.

راح بدري ← لا تروح بدري

Continue:

zaakar fil-maktab.

zaakarat fil-maktab.

9amalat mawaa9iid katiir.

katabu fil-kitaab.

istannu.

nazal fil-fundug.

xallaahum yiju.

ذاكر في المكتب.
ذاكرت في المكتب.
عملت مواعيد كثير.
كتبوا في الكتاب.
استنوا.
نزل في الفندق.
خلاهم يجوا.

Situations

1.

A. Come with me.

B. I can't yet. I have to meet my boss.

A. OK, I'll wait an hour.

B. Don't go without me, please.

2.

A. Whom does he want to see?

B. The director of the company.

A. Have him leave him a note and come back later.

B. I already told him.

3.

A. Do you (p) know each other?

B. Yes, we met each other at school.

A. You are friends?

B. Yes, I've known Khalid for a long time.

LESSON 28

Dialogue

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| professor | ustaaz | استاذ |
| A. Are you a professor here? | inta ustaaz hina? | انت استاذ هنا؟ |
| student | ṭaalib | طالب |
| third (f) | taalta | ثالثة |
| B. No, I'm a third-year student. | la', ana ṭaalib fi sana taalta. | لا، انا طالب في سنة ثالثة. |
| college | kulliyya | كلية |
| engineering | handasa | هندسة |
| isn't that so? | muu kida? | مو كده؟ |
| A. In the College of Engineering, aren't you? | fi kulliyyat al-handasa, muu kida? | في كلية الهندسة، مو كده؟ |
| yes | illa | لا |
| I was educated | atṭallamt | اتعلمت |
| Egypt | maṣur | مصر |
| first (adverb) | fil-awwal | في الاول |
| I finished | kammalt | كملت |
| high school | saanawi | ثانوي |
| B. Yes. I was educated in Egypt first and finished high school there. | illa. atṭallamt fi maṣur fil-awwal wu kammalt saanawi hinaak. | الا، اتعلمت في مصر في الاول وكملت ثانوي هناك. |
| at night | fil-leel | في الليل |
| A. Do you (p) study at night? | tidrusu fil-leel? | تدرسوا في الليل؟ |
| in the daytime | fin-nahaar | في النهار |
| B. No, it's all in the daytime. | la', kullu fin-nahaar. | لا، كله في النهار. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. He is a junior high school teacher. | huwwa mudarris iḡdaadi. | هو مدرس اعدادي. |
| 2. She is in the first grade of elementary school. | hiyya fi sana uula ibtidaa'i. | هي في سنة اولى ابتدائي. |

- | | | |
|---|--|--------------------------------|
| 3. My two children are in nursery school. (or: kindergarten). | awlaadi 1-itneen fil-Haḡaana. | اولادي الاثنين في الحضانة. |
| 4. There are many students in the College of Education. | fii ṭalaba katiir fi kulliyyat at-tarbiya. | فيه طلبة كثير في كلية التربية. |
| 5. He is well educated. | huwwa mitḡallim kwayyis. | هو متعلم كويس. |
| 6. You (m) must finish your education abroad. | laazim tikammil at-taḡliim barra. | لازم تكمل التعليم برا. |
| 7. This is the last time. | haadi aaxir marra. | هادي آخر مرة. |
| 8. Where did you learn English? | feen atḡallamt ingiliizi? | فين اتعلمت الانكليزي؟ |

Grammatical Notes

1. The ordinal numerals are:

Masculine

awwal	اول
taani	ثاني
taalit	ثالث
raabi9	رابع
xaamis	خامس
saadis	سادس
saabi9	سابع
taamin	ثامن
taasi9	تاسع
ḡaaḡir	عاشر

Feminine

uula	اولي	first
taanya	ثانية	second
tāalta	ثالثة	third
raab9a	رابعة	fourth
xaamsa	خامسة	fifth
saadsa	سادسة	sixth
saab9a	سابعة	seventh
taamna	ثامنة	eighth
taas9a	تاسعة	ninth
ḡaaḡra	عاشرة	tenth

Notice that from 'second' on, they follow a predictable vowel pattern.

If the ordinal numeral follows the noun, it must agree in gender:

al-beet al-awwal	the first house
al-marra t-taalta	the third time
marra taanya	a second time; another time

These numerals may also be used before the noun, in which case they remain masculine:

awwal ṡaari9*	the first street
raabi9 beet	the fourth house
raabi9 marra	the fourth time
raabi9 sana	the fourth year

*Note the difference between this phrase and /awwal aṡ-ṡaari9/, 'at the beginning of the street' (Lesson 15).

/aaxir/, 'last', is usually used before nouns:

aaxir beet	the last house
aaxir marra	the last time

Ordinal numerals have a special form only for the numbers 1-10; after this, the regular numeral form is used, always after the noun:

al-beet al-iHda9š the eleventh house
al-marra l-xamaša9š the fifteenth time

2. The "colleges" in Saudi universities are:

aadaab	Arts	آداب
9ulum	Sciences	علوم
ziraa9a	Agriculture	زراعة
tijaara	Commerce	تجارة
tarbiya	Education	تربية
handasa	Engineering	هندسة
šaydala	Pharmacy	صيدلة
šibb	Medicine	طب
iqtišaad	Economics	اقتصاد

3. There are several words which may be translated 'education' in English:

wizaarat al-ma9aarif The Ministry of Education
(literally, 'knowledge')

kulliyyat at-tarbiya The College of Education
(literally, 'upbringing')

ta9liim education, learning

4. /muu kida/, 'isn't that so?' is used after any statement, to check its correctness. It is equivalent to English 'isn't it?', 'aren't you?', etc., or 'n'est-ce pas?' in French. There are several common variations of this phrase, among them:

miš kida? (borrowed from Egyptian)
muu šaHH?
muu šaHiiH?

5. /illa/ is an emphatic way of saying 'yes'. It is also used in response to a negative question, to emphasize the affirmative answer. Another way of saying 'yes' is /ee na9am/ (this is more common in the eastern part of the country).

6. The levels of education in Saudi Arabia are:

Haqaana	nursery school; kindergarten	حضانة
ibtidaa'i	elementary	ابتدائي
i9daadi	intermediate (junior high)	اعداد في
saanawi	secondary (senior high)	ثانوي
jaam9a	university	جامعة
bakaluryoos	Bachelor's degree	بكالوريوس
majisteer	Master's degree	ماجستير
dukturaa	Doctor's degree	دكتورا

When used with the word /madrasa/, 'school', the adjective is feminine:

madrasa ibtidaa'iyya elementary school
madrasa i9daadiyya intermediate school
madrasa saanawiyya secondary school

7. To say 'both', 'all three', etc., the definite article is used with the numeral, after the noun:

awlaadi l-itneen my two children; both of my children

awlaadi t-talaata all three of my children
al-madaaris al-arba9a all four schools

Vocabulary Notes

ustaaz, asaatiiza	professor	استاذ اساتذة
mudarris, -iin (-aat)	teacher	مدرس مدرسات
ṭaalib, ṭalaba (ṭullaab)*	student	طالب طلبة (طلاب)
at9allam, yit9allim	be educated, learn	اتعلم يتعلم
kammal, yikammil	finish	كمل يكمل
mit9allim, -a, -iin	educated	متعلم متعلمين

*This word has two plurals.

Drills

1. I am a third-year student. ana ṭaalib fi sana taalta. انا طالب في سنة ثالثة

Substitute:

first
second
third
fourth
fifth
sixth

2. This is the tenth house. haada l-beet al-9aaṣir. هادا البيت العاشر

Substitute:

fourth
sixth
third
second
eighth
first
fifth
seventh
tenth
eleventh
twentieth

3. This is the fourth year. haadi raabi9 sana. هادي رابع سنة

Substitute:

fifth
second
tenth
eleventh
sixth
eighth
third

xamsa maḍaaris
 9aṣara riḡaal
 sittā ṭalaba
 sab9a ṭayyaaraat

خمسة مدارس
 عشرة رجال
 ستة طلبة
 سبعة طيارات

Situations

1.
 - A. When will you (p) travel?
 - B. The plane leaves at night.
 - A. All of your children are going with you, aren't they?
 - B. Yes, all three of my children and my wife, too.
 - A. Is this the first time you (p) go together?
 - B. No, no...maybe the tenth time. We travel together often ('much').
2.
 - A. I finished my education ('the education') in Egypt before I returned here.
 - B. I heard that you are a professor in the university.
 - A. Yes, in the College of Commerce, Riyadh University.
 - B. Do you teach in the daytime only?
 - A. Daytime and nighttime both.
3.
 - A. Is your brother a student now?
 - B. Yes, he's still in intermediate school. He'll finish next year, if God wills.
 - A. And then go to secondary school?
 - B. Yes, after the exams.

Cultural Notes

1. In Saudi Arabia (and in most of the Arab countries), the elementary level of education is six years, intermediate is three years, and secondary is three years. General examinations are given for one week at the end of each year, which must be passed with a certain percentage score for the student to continue to the next year. National (government-controlled) examinations are usually held at the end of each of the three levels.

LESSON 29

Dialogue

- | | | |
|--|--|------------------------------|
| doctor | duktoor | دكتور |
| A. I'd like to introduce you to Dr. Said. | aHubb a9arrifak 9ala d-duktoor sa9iid. | احب اعرفك على الدكتور سعيد. |
| tidarris | you (m) teach | تدرس |
| B. I'm honored. Where do you teach? | at9arraft. feen Ha9ratak tidarris? | انشرفت فين حضرتك تدرس؟ |
| department | gism | قسم |
| history | taariix | تاريخ |
| A. In the College of Arts, History Department. | fi kulliyyat al-aadaab, gism at-taariix. | في كلية الآداب، قسم التاريخ. |
| B. From where did you get your doctorate? | axadt ad-dukturee min feen? | اخذت الدكتوراه من فين؟ |
| Beirut | beeruut | بيروت |
| scholarship | minHa | منحة |
| A. From Beirut. I had a scholarship. | min beeruut. kaan 9indi minHa. | من بيروت. كان عندي منحة. |
| I visited | zurt | زرت |
| Lebanon | libnaan | لبنان |
| time, occasion | marra | مرة |
| B. Beirut! I've visited Lebanon twice. | beeruut! ana zurt libnaan marrateen. | بيروت! انا زرت لبنان مرتين. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|---|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. This is the engineer Abdalla. | haada l-muhandis 9abdalla. | هادا المهندس عبد الله |
| 2. Where is the emir's office? | feen maktab al-amiir? | فين مكتب الامير؟ |
| 3. I teach in the English department | adarris fi gism al-ingiliizi. | ادرس في قسم الانكليزي. |
| 4. The government gives scholarships to Saudi students. | al-Hukuuma ti9ti minaH li9-talaba s-su9uudiyyiin. | الحكومة تمنح منح للطلبة السعوديين. |
| 5. The airplane left late. | a9-tayyaara gaamat mit'axxira. | الطيارة قامت متأخرة. |

Grammatical Notes

1. The most common personal titles in Saudi Arabia are:

al-muhandis	المهندس	engineer (this may refer to anyone with a degree in the sciences--architect, economist, etc.)
ad-duktoor	الدكتور	Doctor
al-ustaaz	الأستاذ	Professor (this is also used as a title of respect)
al-waziir	الوزير	Minister
aš-šeex	الشيخ	Sheikh
as-safiir	السفير	Ambassador
al-amiir, -a	الأمير	Emir, Prince; Princess
al-malik, -a	الملك	King; Queen
al-axx	الأخ	brother (this is used in referring to a close friend)
al-uxt	الأخت	sister (this is used for a friend or as a title of respect)

Note that the titles are used with the definite article before the name:

haada l-axx maHmuud. This is (my friend) Mahmoud.
haada d-duktoor sa9iid. This is Dr. Said.

2. "Colleges" in universitites are sub-divided into departments according to subject, for example:

taariix	history	تاريخ
jughraafya	geography	جغرافيا
riyaaqa	mathematics	رياضيات
kiimya	chemistry	كيمياء
9ulum siyaasiyya	political science	علوم سياسية
diraasaat aš-šarq	Middle Eastern studies	دراسات الشرق الأوسط
al-awsaṭ		

3. /a9ṭa, yi9ṭi/, 'to give', is a classicized word which is used almost as frequently as /adda, yiddi/. It is more common in formal situations. It is usually used with direct objects, although /l-/, 'to', is sometimes heard.

Perfect

Imperfect

huwwa a9ṭa	yi9ṭi	يعطي	اعطى
hiyya a9ṭat	ti9ṭi	تعطي	اعطت
humma a9ṭu	yi9ṭu	يعطوا	اعطوا
inta a9ṭeet	ti9ṭi	تعطي	اعطيت
inti a9ṭeeti	ti9ṭi	تعطين	اعطين
intu a9ṭeetu	ti9ṭu	تعطوا	اعطيتوا
ana a9ṭeet	a9ṭi	اعطني	اعطيت
iHna a9ṭeena	ni9ṭi	نعطي	اعطينا

4. The verb /kaan, yikuun/ can be used with modal words to express past and future tense:

9indi minHa.	I have a scholarship.
kaan 9indi minHa.	I had a scholarship.
raH-yikuun 9indi minHa.	I will have a scholarship.
laazim yiruuH.	He must go.
kaan laazim yiruuH.	He had to go. He should have gone.

mumkin niiji ba9deen.
kaan mumkin niiji
ba9deen,

We can come later.
We could have come later.

Vocabulary Notes

minHa, minaH
9aaşima, 9awaaşim
marra, -aat
gism, agsaam

scholarship
capital
time, occasion
department

منحة منح
عاصمة عواصم
مرة ت
قسم اقسام

a9ta, yi9ti
darras, yidarris
zaar, yizuur (zurt)
gaam, yiguum (gumt)

give
teach
visit
stand up, get up, ascend

اعطى يعطي
دّرّس يدرّس
زار يزور (زرت)
قام يقوم (قامت)

muhandis, -iin
duktoor, dakaatra
šeex, šuyuux
safiir, sufara
amiir, umara
amiira, -aat
malik, muluuk
malika, -aat

engineer
doctor
sheikh
ambassador
prince
princess
king
queen

مهندس س-ين
دكتور د-كاترة
شيخ شيوخ
سفير سفراء
امير امراء
اميرة -ات
ملك ملوك
ملكة -ات

Arab State

Nationality Adjective

Saudi Arabia as-su9uudiyya
Yemen al-yaman
The Emirates al-imaaraat
Oman 9umaan
Qatar qaṭar
Bahrein al-baHreen
Kuwait al-kuweet
Lebanon libnaan
Syria suuriya
Jordan al-urdun
Iraq al-9iraaq
Morocco al-maghrrib
Algeria al-jazaayir
Tunisia tuunis
Libya liibya
Egypt maşur
Sudan as-suudaan
Palestine falasṭiin

su9uudi
yamaani

9umaani
qaṭari
baHreeni
kuweeti
libnaani
suuri
urduni
9iraaqi
maghrribi
jazaayiri
tuunisi
liibi
maşri
suudaani
falaṣṭiini

سعودي
يمني

عماني
قطري
بحريني
كويتي
لبناني
سوري
اردني
عراقي
مغربي
جزائري
تونسي
ليبي
مصري
سوداني
فلسطيني

السعودية
اليمن
الإمارات
عمان
قطر
البحرين
الكويت
لبنان
سوريا
الأردن
العراق
المغرب
الجزائر
تونس
ليبيا
مصر
السودان
فلسطين

Capital City

Riyadh ar-riyaaḍ
Sanaa ṣan9a
Abu Dhabi abuu ḡabi
Muscat maṣqaṭ
Doha ad-dooHa
Manama al-manaama
Kuwait City al-kuweet
Beirut beeruut
Damascus dimiṣq
Amman 9ammaan
Baghdad baghdaad
Rabat ar-rabaat
Algiers al-jazaayir

الرياض
صنعا
أبو ظبي
مسقط
الدوحة
المنامة
الكويت
بيروت
دمشق
عمان
بغداد
الرباط
الجزائر

Tunis	tuunis
Tripoli	ṭarabluṣ
Cairo	al-qaahira
Khartoum	al-xarṭuum
Jerusalem	al-guds

تونس
طرابلس
القاهرة
الخرطوم
القدس

Drills

1. I'd like to introduce you to Dr. Said. aHubb a9arrifak 9ala d-duktoor sa9iid.

احب اعرفك على الدكتور سعيد

Substitute:

the prince
"brother" Ahmad
the minister
Professor Abdalla
"engineer" Mahmoud
the ambassador
the king
the princess
"sister" Miryam
the queen
Dr. Said
Sheikh Muhammad

2. I teach in the History Department. adarris fi gism at-taariix.

ادرس في قسم التاريخ

Substitute:

the Mathematics Department
the Chemistry Department
the Political Science Department
the Geography Department
the Middle East Studies Department

3. Beirut! I've visited Lebanon twice. beeruut! ana zurt libnaan maffateen.

بيروت! انا زرت لبنان مرتين

Substitute:

Amman - Jordan
Sanaa - Yemen
Baghdad - Iraq
Abu Dhabi - The Emirates
Damascus - Syria
Cairo - Egypt
Tunis - Tunisia
Tripoli - Libya
Muscat - Oman
Manama - Bahrein
Algiers - Algeria
Khartoum - Sudan
Doha - Qatar
Kuwait City - Kuwait
Rabat - Morocco
Riyadh - Saudi Arabia
Beirut - Lebanon

4. Where is the Emir's office?

feen maktab al-amiir?

فين مكتب الامير؟

Substitute:

the king
the Minister of Finance
the Minister of Education
the Minister of Defense
the ambassador
the professor
the engineer
the doctor
the teacher
the manager
Mr. Smith
the supervisor

5. She will get up now.
(i.e., in order to leave)

Ha-tiguum daHHiin.

حَتَقُوم د حِينْ

Substitute:

will leave
he
visit his father
I
drive the car
stand up
we
visit our family
learn the new lesson
she
get up

6. I visited him yesterday. zurtu ams.

زرتُه امسْ

Substitute:

I visited them
she visited them
she saw them
we
drove the car twice
got up at 4:30
saw all of them
he
drove to the house

7. He gave me money.

a9taani fuluus.

اعطاني فلوسْ

Substitute:

she gave me
the letter
they gave him
they gave us
the order
I gave you (m)
I gave the manager

the note
we gave somebody
the scholarship

(Repeat the drill, changing it to future tense)

8. Given the name of the country, use a sentence with the nationality adjective.

Example: huwwa min as-suudaan. → huwwa suudaani. هو من السودان ← هو سوداني

Continue:

huwwa min al-yaman.
gaṭar.
libnaan
al-9iraaq
tuunis
al-maghrīb
al-kuweet
suuriya
al-baḥreen
liibya
maṣur
9umaan
al-urdun
as-su9uudiyya
falasṭiin
al-jazaayir
as-suudaan

هو من اليمن
قطر
لبنان
العراق
تونس
المغرب
الكويت
سوريا
البحرين
ليبيا
مصر
عمان
الأردن
السعودية
فلسطين
الجزائر
السودان

Situations

1.
 - A. I'm leaving for Egypt tomorrow.
 - B. Really, why?
 - A. I have a scholarship to study history at Cairo University.
 - B. Congratulations! Will you stay long? ('much')
 - A. Until I finish my Master's degree, if God wills.
 - B. When you return, will you teach in the university?
 - A. Yes, I'll be a professor.
2.
 - A. Yesterday I met the sheikh.
 - B. What did you (p) discuss?
 - A. We discussed education and health. ('the education and the health')
 - B. Good, I want to visit him soon, too.
 - A. He asked me to visit him next month at the Emir's house.
(/9ind al-amiir/)
 - B. Maybe you and the ambassador can both go.
3.
 - A. There are many Egyptian teachers and professors in Saudi Arabia, aren't there?
 - B. Oh yes, in elementary, intermediate, and secondary schools, and in the university, too.
 - A. And in girls' education?
 - B. In girls' education [even] more! Women teachers are Egyptian and Palestinian.
 - A. But Saudi women are now studying education.
 - B. Yes, in the Girls' College here there is a Department of Education.

LESSON 30

Review last nine dialogues.

Supplementary Drills

1. I don't know what he bought. ma adri eeš ištara.

ما ادري ايشر اشترى.

Substitute:

what he saw
where the glass is
if he agrees or not ('is agreeing or no')
why they are in a hurry
where the driver is
[whether] he wants coffee or tea
when he met the minister
the telephone number
who is the manager's assistant
how many employees are in the company
why nobody answers
who she went with
what time the plane left ('ascended')
how old his daughter is
where he was educated
how many colleges are in the university
what the capital of Iraq is
which department he teaches in
the prince's name

2. When will you (m) go to the doctor? mita Ha-tiruuH lid-duktoor?

متا حنروح للدكتور؟

Substitute:

have ('drink') tea at my house?
be able to return?
speak to the driver?
finish your education?
tell me about the agreement?
be free?
will someone tell him?
will we go together?
will we see each other?
will your son enter kindergarten?
will you (m) visit me?

3. In Saudi Arabia there are many cars. fis-su9uudiyya fii sayyaaraat katiir.

في السعودية فيه سيارات كثير.

Substitute:

buildings
offices
companies
foreigners
Americans
embassies
airplanes
streets
ministers

princes
 projects
 plans
 employees
 teachers
 professors
 students
 universities
 colleges
 doctors
 schools
 families
 cities
 airports
 Egyptians
 Arabs
 banks

Narratives

1. I live in the big house near the post office. I work as the manager of an American company which has been in Saudi Arabia three years. Every day I drive my car to the office about 8:30. My wife is a teacher and we have two children, a boy and a girl. We like Arabia and [have] traveled to Yemen, Lebanon, and also Jordan. Next year we will go to Egypt, we hope. The children are in the American school, where one (m) is in the fifth grade and one (f) is in the second grade. They speak a little Arabic because they study it in school two hours every week. I met their teacher last week, and she said that they are studying well and learning quickly. We are all happy here and have many friends, both Arab and American.

2. When I entered the university at first I studied history. Later I studied political science for the M.A., and then I worked for the government. I like to travel, especially in the Middle East, and I want to learn Arabic in order to talk to the people whom I meet.

3. Please come to my house soon; my wife wants to meet your wife, and bring the children, of course. There are many things we could talk about; I want to learn about Saudi Arabia--the people, the history, the geography, the commerce. Call me on the telephone after 9:00 a.m.--you know my office phone, don't you? And I'll give you my home telephone number too. Sorry, do you have a piece of paper and a pen? Thanks. If God wills, we'll hear from you (p) soon.

4. Excuse me, what time is it? Oh, I'm late and I have an appointment at the ministry! Can I find a taxi here? Across from that big building? Thanks.

5. Take me to the Ministry of Defense, please. I'm in a hurry, but drive carefully. Where are you from? Sudan, really? How long have you been here in Arabia? Ten years! That's a long time! Are you happy here? Thank God. Yes, I speak Arabic because I studied it for ten months. I like to speak Arabic; I meet nice people. Turn left here--here is fine. How much? Take it (/atfaḍḍal/). Goodby.

LESSON 31

Dialogue

(At the airport)

ticket	tazkira	تذكرة
passport	jawaaz as-safar	جواز السفر
A. Ticket and passport, please.	at-tazkira wu jawaaz as-safar min faḍlak.	التذكرة وجواز السفر، من فضلك
B. Right here.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل
visa	ta'ṣiira	تأشيرة
entry	duxuul	دخول
A. Give them to me. Do you have an entry visa?	addiinihumma. 9indak ta'ṣiirat duxuul?	أدعينيهم. عندك تأشيرة دخول؟
B. Yes.	iiwa.	أيوه.
A. How many bags?	kam ṣanṭa?	كم شنطة؟
red (p)	Humur	حمر
B. Those three red suitcases.	at-talaata ṣunaṭ al-Humur hadool.	الثلاثة شنط الحمر هذول.
weight	wazn	وزن
excess	ziyaada	زيادة
tax	ḡariiba	ضريبة
A. You must pay 25 riyals for excess weight, plus the airport tax.	laazim tidfa9 xamsa wu 9iṣriin riyaal wazn ziyaada, zaayid ḡariibat al-maṭaar.	لازم تدفع خمسة وعشرين ريال وزن زيادة زائد ضريبة المطار.

Structure Sentences

1. Where is passport control?	feen al-jawaazaat?	فين الجوازات؟
2. You must will out this card.	laazim timalli haada l-kart.	لازم تطلي هادا الكرت.
3. Where is the waiting room (lobby)?	feen ghurfat al-intiṣaar?	فين غرفة الانتظار؟
4. Where is the rest room?	feen al-Hammaam?	فين الحمام؟
5. I showed it (m) to her?	warreetahahuwwa.	وريتهاهو.
6. I like the blue car.	aHubb as-sayyaara z-zarga.	احب السيارة الزرقا.

7. I made a reservation. 9amalt Hajz. عملت حجز
 8. Is this your luggage? haada 9afṣak? هادا عفشك؟

Grammatical Notes

1. /jawaaz as-safar/, 'the passport', literally means 'the travel permit'. /jawaaz safar/ means 'a passport' (formed by making the second noun indefinite). The borrowed word /basboor, basboorṭaat/ is also used.

2. Some verbs take both a direct object and an indirect object. If these are both pronouns, they may both be suffixed to the verb.

(1) The indirect object is expressed before the direct object.

(2) The indirect object may be expressed as if it were direct, i.e., without /l-/.
 (3) Only /huwwa/, /hiyya/, and /humma/ are used as the second object in these constructions.

addiinihuwwa.*	Give it to me. ('Give [to] me it (m).')
addiilihuwwa.*	Give it to me. ('Give to me it (m).')
addiiluhuwwa.	Give it to him. ('Give to him it (m).')
warreetahahuwwa.	I showed it (m) to her. ('I showed [to] her it (m).')
jaablihumma.	He brought them to me. ('He brought to me them.')
laazim tijiiblahahiyya.	You must bring it (f) to her.

*Both are correct, although the first form is more used.

With other pronouns, this construction is avoided by expressing one of the objects with a noun.

3. While /ṣaṇṭa, ṣunaṭ/ refers to briefcases or suitcases, the word /9afṣ/ is usually used to refer to 'luggage' as a whole.

4. Colors must agree with the noun in gender and number. Most colors follow a predictable vowel pattern; some names are of foreign origin and do not change:

<u>Masculine</u>		<u>Feminine</u>		<u>Plural</u>		
aḥmar	أحمر	Hamra	حمراء	Humur	حمر	red
azraḡ	أزرق	zarga	زرقة	zurg	زرق	blue
axḡar	أخضر	xaḡra	خضراء	xuḡur	خضر	green
aṣḡar	أصفر	ṣaḡra	صفراء	ṣufur	صفر	yellow
aswad	أسود	sooda	سوداء	suud	سود	black
abyaḡ	أبيض	beeḡa	بيضا	beeḡ	بيض	white
banafsaji		بنفسجي				purple
burtukaani		برتقاني				orange
bunni		بنى				brown
rumaadi		رمادي				gray

Examples:

at-talaata ṣunaṭ al-Humur (or: at-talaata ṣunaṭ al-Hamra)	the three red suitcases
al-waraga l-beeḡa	the white piece of paper
al-beet al-abyaḡ	the white house
al-kitaab al-aṣḡar	the yellow book
as-sayyaara l-rumaadi	the gray car
9ajabni l-axḡar.	I liked the green [one].

Vocabulary Notes

jawaaz, -aat (safar)
tazkira, tazaakir
ta'siira, -aat
qariiba, qaraayib
kart, kuruut

passport
ticket
visa
tax
card

جواز سفر - ات
تذكرة - ات
تأشيرة - ات
ضريبة
كرت كروت

malla, yimalli (malleet)
warra, yiwarri (warreet)

fill
show

ملو يملئ (مليت)
ورر يورر (وريت)

Drills

1. Give them [to] me.

addiinihumma.

اد بنهم

Continue:

to him
to her
to us
Give it (m)
to me
to him
Give it (f)
to them
to me

2. Can you show it (m)
to me?

mumkin tiwarriinihuwwa?

مكن تورنيهو؟

Continue:

to us
to them
give it (m)
to her
pay it (m)
to him
to me
but it (f)
for them
for us
sell them
for him
for her
bring it (m)
for me
for him
fill it (m) out
for them
for us

3. Those three red suitcases. at-talaata Yunaṭ
al-Humur hadool.

الثلاثة شنط الحمر هدول

Continue:

blue
yellow
gray
black
white
purple
green
brown
red

4. I like the blue car. aHubb as-sayyaara z-zarga. احب السيارة الزرقاء.

Continue:

green
black
red
yellow
orange
gray
brown
white

5. Express the sentence in Arabic, first with a direct object and indirect object, then substitute the object pronouns.

Example: Give the book to Ahmad. —→ Give it to him.

addi l-kitaab l-Ahmad. —→ addiiluhuwwa. ادر الكتاب لاحمد ← ادبلوهو.

Continue:

Give the suitcase to Miriam.
Fill out the card for the official ('employee').
Make the reservation for him.
Read the lesson to the students.
Bring the coffee to the lady.
Take the books to the professor.
Carry the suitcase for the girl.
Do the homework for me.
Leave [behind] the message for him.
Sell the car for me.

Situations

1.
 - A. Where do I take my ticket?
 - B. [Over] there, at the airline office (/maktab at-ṭayaraan/).
 - A. Can I leave my suitcase here?
 - B. Are these all yours?
 - A. No, only the black ones.
 - B. Leave them for me. I'll carry them.
2.
 - A. Have you seen my friend (m)?
 - B. Yes, he's waiting for you in the waiting room.
 - A. Can you show it to me?
 - B. Of course. Go straight, then turn right.
 - A. Is there a restroom there?
 - B. Yes, of course.
3.
 - A. What are you (f) going to buy?
 - B. Maybe I'll buy this red purse. Do you (m) like it?
 - A. Yes, but I like the white one better. It's bigger.
 - B. But more expensive too. See the green one? Can you (m) get it for me?
 - A. Here (/atfaḍḍali/). This is the prettiest [one]. Buy it.

LESSON 32

Dialogue

(At a gasoline station)

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| A. Fill it (f) up. | malliiha. | مليتها. |
| regular, ordinary | 9aadi | عادي. |
| excellent | mumtaaz | ممتاز |
| B. Regular or super? | 9aadi walla mumtaaz? | عادي ولا ممتاز؟ |
| clean (m) | naḍḍif | نظيف |
| glass | guzaaz | قزاز |
| oil | zeet | زيت |
| A. Regular. Clean the glass and check ('see') the oil too, please. | 9aadi. naḍḍif al-guzaaz wu ḡuuf az-zeet kamaan, min faḍlak. | عادي. نظف القزاز وشوف الزيت كمان من فضلك. |
| forbidden | mamnuu9 | منوع |
| exit | xuruuj | خروج |
| B. OK. Sorry, no exit ('exiting is forbidden') from here. | ṭayyib. aasif, mamnuu9 al-xuruuj min hina. | طيب. آسف، ممنوع الخروج من هنا. |
| I take out | axarrij | أخرج |
| A. From where can I take the car out? | min feen axarrij as-sayyaara? | من فين أخرج السيارة؟ |
| entrance | madxal | مدخل |
| B. From the entrance. | min al-madxal. | من المدخل. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I must find a gas station. | laazim alaagi maHaṭṭat banziin. | لازم الاقي محطة بنزين. |
| 2. No entry. | mamnuu9 ad-duxuul. | ممنوع الدخول. |
| 3. No standing. | mamnuu9 al-wuguuf. | ممنوع الوقوف. |
| 4. The car is very clean. | as-sayyaara marra naḍiifa. | السيارة مرة نظيفة. |
| 5. Where is the bus station? | feen mawgif al-utubiis? | فين موقف الانوبيس؟ |

Grammatical Notes

1. /naḍḍaf/, 'to clean', and /daxxal/, 'to bring', are examples of "causative" verbs in Arabic. These verbs can be recognized by the doubled consonants in the middle, and always follow the pattern:

Perfect

C₁aC₂C₂aC₃

naḍḍaf
daxxal

Imperfect

yiC₁aC₂C₂iC₃

yinaḍḍif
yidaxxil

The meaning of these verbs is 'to cause to do' or 'to cause to be'. /naḍḍaf/ is related to /naḍiif/, 'to clean', and literally means 'to cause to be clean'. /daxxal/ is related to /daxal/, 'to enter', and literally means 'to cause to enter'.

The following causative verbs are related to words introduced so far:

Verb

Related to:

daxxal	bring in	daxal	دَخَلَ
waṣṣal	take to a destination	waṣal	وَصَلَ
fahham	explain, help to understand	fihim	فَهَّم
ṣayyal	load	ṣaal	صَال
xarraḡ	expel	xaraḡ	خَرَجَ
waggaf	stop, make stop	wigif	وَقَفَ
nazzal	take down	nazal	نَزَلَ
ṭalla9	carry up	ṭili9	طَلَعَ
xallaṣ	finish	xalaṣ	خَلَصَ
9arraḡ	inform	9irif	عَرَفَ
rajjaa9	return (something)	riji9	رَجَعَ
naḍḍaf	clean	naḍiif	نَضَفَ
darras	teach	daras	دَرَسَ

2. /aasif/ (/aasfa, aasfiin/) is another way to say 'sorry'. It is used as often as /mit'assif/.

3. /xuruuj/ is an example of a "verbal noun". Verbal nouns are formed from the verb, and are usually translated into English as a gerund, i.e., a verb form ending in "-ing" which is used as a noun.

mamnuu9 al-xuruuj. Departure is forbidden.
Going out is forbidden.

Many verbal nouns follow a predictable vowel pattern, but there are variations:

duxuul	entry	دُخُول
xuruuj	exit, departure	خُرُوج
wuguuf	standing	وُقُوف
juluus	sitting	جُلُوس
wuṣuul	arriving, arrival	وُصُول
kalaam	speaking	كَلَام
kitaaba	writing	كِتَابَة
ṣurb	drinking	شُرْب
noom	sleeping	نَوْم

4. /madxal/ is an example of a "noun of place". Nouns of place are formed by using /ma-/ as a prefix to a verbal root. The pattern is usually:

maC₁C₂aC₃ plural: maC₁aaC₂iC₃

A noun of place may be literally translated as 'a place of doing'.

Not all verbs have nouns of place. Some of the more common ones are:

Noun of Place

Related to:

madxal, madaaxil	entrance	daxal	مدخل - مداخل
mawgif, mawaagif	stop, stand (bus, taxi)	wigif	موقف - مواقف
maktab, makaatib	office	katab	مكتب - مكاتب
maktaba, -aat	library, bookstore	katab	مكتبة - مكتبات
madrasa, madaaris	school	daras	مدرسة - مدارس
manzil, manaazil	house*	nazal	منزل - منازل
majlis, majaalis	"majlis" (the king's public session)	jalas	مجلس - مجالس
masjid, masaajid	mosque	sajad ('bow down')	مسجد - مساجد
maṭaar, -aat	airport	ṭayyaara	مطار - مطارات
maḥaṭṭa, -aat	station	ḥaṭṭ	محطة - محطات
makaan, amaakin	place	kaan	مكان - أماكن

*/manzil/ is more classicized than /beet/.

Vocabulary Notes

mumtaaz, -a, -iin	excellent	ممتاز - بين
ḡaadi, -iyya, -yiin	regular, ordinary	عادي - بين
naḡiif, -a, nuḡaaf	clean	نظيف - نظاف
mamnuuḡ, -a, -iin	forbidden, prevented	منوع - بين
utubiis, -aat	bus	اتوبيس - ات

Drills

1. Given a word, form the causative verb related to it.

Example: naḡiif → naḡḡaf

نظيف ← نظف

Continue:

waṣal	وصل
nazal	نزل
xaraj	خرج
xalaṣ	خلص
daxal	دخل
ṣaal	شال
wigif	وقف
daras	درس
ḡirif	عرف

2. You (m) must clean the glasses.

laazim tinagḡif al-guzaaz.

لأنم تنظف القزاز

Substitute:

you (f)
you (p)
we
finish early
he
I
the employees
she

explain it to him (use /fahham/)

I

his sister

the teachers

teach well

he

they

take in the suitcases

he

the men

we

take her there (use /waṣṣal/)

I

Ahmad

3. Clean (m) the glass. naḍḍif al-guzaaz.

نظف القزاز.

Substitute:

clean (f)

clean (p)

take (m) upstairs

the luggage

take out (f)

take out (m)

have him carry

have her carry

take down (m)

take down (p)

the books

clean (m)

the station

the glass

4. Given the verb, form the verbal noun:

xaraj

daxal

jalas

katab

atkallam

wasal

naam

ṣirib

wigif

خرج
دخل
جلس
كتب
اتكلم
وصل
نام
شرب
وقف

5. No exit here. mamnuu9 al-xuruuj hina.

ممنوع الخروج هنا.

Substitute:

no entry

no standing

no talking

no drinking

no sitting

no sleeping

no writing

6. Given a word, form the noun of place related to it:

daras

katab (two nouns)

ṭayyaara

درس
كتب
طيارة

wigif
daxal
nazal
kaan
jalas

وقف
دخل
نزل
كان
جلس

7. He went to the airport. raah al-maṭaar.

راح المطار

Substitute:

the house
the library
the entrance of the building
the new office
many places
his son's school
the bus station
the gas station
the bus stop
the airport

8. Where is the bus stop? feen mawgif al-utubiis?

فين موقف الاتوبيس؟

Substitute:

the entrance of the station
the airline office
the university library
the passport office (/jawaazaat/)
the rest room
the blue card
the waiting room
the visa department
the ticket office
the bus stop

Situations

1.
 - A. Fill it up, please.
 - B. OK. Super or regular?
 - A. Super. How much?
 - B. Eight riyals. [Shall] I clean the glass?
 - A. Please. And check the oil, too.
 - B. Any service.
2.
 - A. Where is the bus stop?
 - B. At the beginning of the next street.
 - A. When does the bus come?
 - B. Every half hour. Perhaps I can take you in my car. Where are you going?
 - A. To the university library. I'm a student in the Commerce Department.
 - B. Pleased to meet you.
3.
 - A. Sorry, no sitting here.
 - B. Why [not]?
 - A. This is the entrance of the lobby. Go ahead inside.
 - B. Thanks. Is there a rest room here?
 - A. Turn right at the desk, then straight ahead.
 - B. Thanks very much.

LESSON 33

Dialogue

souk (bazaar market)	suug	سوق
I pay	adfa9	ادفع
bill	Hisaab	حساب
shop	dukkaan	دكان
fabric	gumaaʕ	قماش
A. I want to go to the souk. I have to pay a bill at the fabric shop.	abgha aruuH as-suug. laazim adfa9 Hisaab fi dukkaan al-gumaaʕ.	ابغى اروح السوق. لازم ادفع حساب في دكان القماش.
I look for	adawwir (9ala)	ادور (على)
radio	raadyu	راديو
B. I'll go with you, in order to look for a radio.	H-aruuH ma9aak 9aʕaan adawwir 9ala raadyu.	حاروج معاك عشان ادور على راديو.
middle	wasat	وسط
radios	rawaadi	روادي
televisions	tilifizyoonaat	تلفزيونات
recorders	musajjilaat	مسجلات
A. I know a good shop in the middle of the souk. They sell radios, televisions, and recorders.	a9rif dukkaan kwayyis fi wasat as-suug. yibii9u rawaadi wu tilifizyoonaat wu musajjilaat.	اعرف دكان كويس في وسط السوق. بيبيعوا رادي و تلفزيونات ومسجلات.
I hope	9asa	عسى
everywhere	kull makaan	كل مكان
B. I hope there will be one. I've looked everywhere.	9asa yikuun fii waaHid. ana dawwart fi kull makaan.	عسى يكون فيه واحد. انا بدورت في كل مكان.
our Lord	rabbana	ربنا
he gives success	yiwaaffig	يوفق
A. Good luck. ('May our Lord give you success')	rabbana yiwaaffig.	ربنا يوفق.
B. Thanks. ('If God wills')	in ʕaa' allaah.	ان شاء الله.

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. There were many people there. | kaan fii naas katiir hinaak. | كان فيه ناس كثير هناك. |
| 2. There wasn't time. | ma kaan fii wagt. | ما كان فيه وقت. |
| 3. I ordered a radio from him. | ṭalabt raadyu min 9indu. | طلبت راديو من عنده. |
| 4. I asked for help from him. | ṭalabt minnu musaa9ada. | طلبت منه مساعدة. |
| 5. The account is balanced. | al-Hisaab maḡbuuṭ. | الحساب مطبوط. |
| 6. This is the best store. | haada aHsan maHall. | هادا احسن محل. |
| 7. His father is a merchant in the old souk. | abuu taajir fis-suug al-gadiima. | ابوه تاجر في السوق القديمة. |

Grammatical Notes

1. Foreign words like /tilifoon/ and /tilifizyoon/ usually take the /-aat/ plural. When in doubt, guess this plural first.

2. /9asa/ may be translated 'I hope', 'it is hoped', 'possibly'. It may be used with a verb or with a pronoun suffix:

9asaa	it is hoped that he	عسا
9asaaha	it is hoped that she	عساها
9asaahum	it is hoped that they	عساهم
9asaak	it is hoped that you (m)	عساك
9asaaki	it is hoped that you (f)	عساك
9asaakum	it is hoped that you (p)	عساكم
9asaani	it is hoped that I	عساني
9asaana	it is hoped that we	عسانا
9asa yikuun fii waaHid.	I hope there will be one.	
9asaahum yiktubuulana.	I hope they write to us.	

3. /fii/ and /ma fii/, 'there is (not)', 'there are (not)', may be used with /kaan/:

kaan fii naas katiir hinaak.	There were many people there.
9asa yikuun fii waaHid.	I hope there will be one.
ma kaan fii wagt.	There wasn't time.
ma Ha-yikuun fii wagt.	There will not be time.

4. /ṭalab/ may mean 'to order' (in the sense of 'to place an order') or 'to ask for, request' (cf. Structure Sentences 3 and 4). Note the difference between /ṭalab/, 'to ask for (a thing)' and /sa'al/, 'to ask (information, a question)'.

5. /dukkaan/ generally refers to a small shop, while /maHall/ is used for a larger store. However, the terms are often used interchangeably.

Vocabulary Notes

dafa9, yidfa9
dawwar, yidawwir (9ala)
ṭalab, yuṭlub

pay
look for
ask for, request, order

دفع يدفع
دور يدور (على)
طلب يطلب

raadyu, rawaadi
tilifizyoon, -aat
musajjil, -aat
wagt, awgaat
taajir, tujjaar
suug, aswaag*
dukkaan, dakaakiin
maHall, -aat

radio
television
recorder
time
merchant
souk, market
shop
store

راديو رادي
تلفزيون -ات
مسجل -ات
وقت اوقات
تاجر تجار
سوق اسواق
دكان دكاكين
محل -ات

maḥbuuṭ, -a, -iin

accurate, correct

مضبوط -ين

*This word is feminine.

Drills

1. I want to go to the
souk.

abgha aruuH as-suug.

ابغى اروح السوق.

Substitute:

the store
the shop
the gas station
the elementary school
the radio store ('radios store')
the souk

2. I have to pay a bill
at the fabric shop.

laazim adfa9 Hisaab fi
dukkaan al-gumaaṣ.

لازم ادفع حساب في
الدكان القماش.

Substitute:

humma
iHna
hiyya
huwwa
inta
ana
inti

هم
احنا
هي
هو
انت
انا
انت

3. I know a good shop in
the middle of the
souk.

a9rif dukkaan kwayyis
fi wasaṭ as-suug.

اعرف دكان كويس في
وسط السوق.

Substitute:

in the beginning of the souk
at the end of the souk
in the old souk
in the new souk
in the middle of the souk

4. I hope there will be
one.

9asa yikuun fii waaHid.

عسى يكون فيه واحد.

Substitute:

there will be many

there will be time
we will arrive early
he will buy a television
we will finish the work soon
I can order a car

5. I've looked everywhere. ana dawwart fi kull makaan.

انا رويت في كل مكان

Substitute:

we
she
in every store
they
you (f)
in every bookstore
he
I

Situations

1.

A. Excuse me, do you sell recorders?
B. Yes, of course. Our recorders are the best and the cheapest.
A. I don't have much time. Can you show me a small one?
B. This one is Japanese, lightweight and excellent.
A. I like it. How much?
B. Only 300 riyals. (After the purchase): Congratulations.
A. Thanks.
2.

A. How much is our account now?
B. You owe me 15 riyals.
A. Here you are.
B. Thank you. Now the account is balanced. Do you want anything else?
A. No, thanks. Some other time, if God wills.
3.

A. Did you visit your sister in Riyadh?
B. No, there wasn't time. I was there only one day.
A. Why did you go?
B. One of my friends opened a small shop and he asked me to help ('asked from me help').
A. Where is the shop?
B. In the middle of the souk. He sells fabrics, for both men and women.
A. Good luck [to him].
B. Thanks.

Cultural Notes

1. The "souk" is the old marketplace found in virtually every city and town in the Middle East. It usually consists of many small shops arranged along narrow lanes, all of which display a wide variety of goods. Sometimes large souks have "quarters" where merchants specialize in one type of merchandise. It is a crowded, busy area, the scene of bargaining and socializing, and a favorite place for bargain-hunters.

Sometimes the word /suug/ is used to mean 'downtown'. The sentence 'I'm going to the souk' may just mean 'I'm going shopping'.

LESSON 34

Dialogue

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| weather | jaww | جو |
| hot | Harr | حر |
| A. The weather here is very hot! | al-jaww hina marra Harr! | الجو هنا مرة حر! |
| you (m) get used to | tit9awwid (9ala) | تتعود (على) |
| B. Yes, but you (m) get used to it. | iiwa, laakin tit9awwid 9alee. | ايوه لكن تتعود عليه |
| like, similar to | zayy | زي |
| south | januub | جنوب |
| west | gharb | غرب |
| United States | al-wilaayaat al-muttaHida | الولايات المتحدة |
| A. It's like the southwest United States. | zayy januub gharb al-wilaayaat al-muttaHida. | زي جنوب غرب الولايات المتحدة. |
| I heard | simi9t | سمعت |
| like that | kida | كده |
| cold | bard | برد |
| B. Yes, I [have] heard that. Not all of America is cold. | iiwa, simi9t kida. amriika mahi kullaha barda. | ايوه سمعت كده. امريكا مهية كلها برده. |
| of course not | ṭab9an la' | طبعاً لا |
| north | ṣamaal | شمال |
| the world | ad-dunya | الدنيا |
| winter | ṣita | شتا |
| A. Of course not. Only in the north is it cold in the winter. ('the world is cold') | ṭab9an la'. bass fiṣ-ṣamaal ad-dunya bard fiṣ-ṣita. | طبعاً لا. بس في الشمال الدنيا برد في الشتا. |
| I read | giriit | قرئت |
| B. I [have] read about America's weather. | giriit 9an jaww amriika. | قرئت عن جو امريكا. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. The weather here is cold. | al-jaww hina bard. | الجو هنا برد. |
| 2. Today is windy. ('north [wind]') | al-yoom ṣamaal. | اليوم شمال. |

3. I'm cold.	ana bardaan.	انا بردان
4. I'm hot.	ana Harraan.	انا حران
5. The coffee is hot.	al-gahwa Harra.	القهوة حرة
6. I hope you're better soon. ('your safety')	salaamatak.	سلامتك
7. Spring and fall are the best seasons.	ar-rabii9 wu l-xariif aHsan fuṣuul.	الربيع والخريف احسن فصول
8. I believe so.	a9taqid kida.	اعتقد كده

Grammatical Notes

1. Terms for weather are:

al-jaww Harr.	The weather is hot.
al-jaww bard.	The weather is cold.
al-jaww mu9tadil.	The weather is moderate.

Also used is the word /ad-dunya/, 'the world', which is used as an idiom to mean 'It's hot', etc. This means, however, the weather only temporarily (today), whereas /al-jaww/ refers to a more permanent type of weather.

ad-dunya Harr.	It's hot.
ad-dunya bard.	It's cold.
ad-dunya ṣams.	It's sunny ('sun').

Note that /dunya/ takes a masculine adjective.

2. Adjectives which describe a temporary state often have the suffix /-aan/. They always take the /-a/ suffix for feminine and /-iin/ for plural. Among the most frequent are:

Harraan	hot	حران
bardaan	cold	بردان
ta9baan	tired	تعبان
jii9aan	hungry	جبان
9aṭṣaan	thirsty	عطشان
ghalṭaan	wrong	غلطان
xarbaan	out of order	خربان

Note that, for example, /Harraan/, /bardaan/, and /ghalṭaan/ are used to describe a person's state, not /Harr/, /bard/, and /ghalaṭ/, which are used for inanimate nouns.

3. The four directions are:

ṣamaal	north	شمال
januub	south	جنوب
ṣarg	east	شرق
gharb	west	غرب

When two directions are combined, they are placed in a noun construct:

januub gharb al-wilaayaat the southwest United States
al-muttaHida

ana min ṣamaal ṣarg I am from northeast
wilaayat New York New York State.

4. Since most Saudis are not very familiar with American place names, it is clearer to identify places as 'the state of Ohio', 'the state of New York', 'the city of Chicago', etc.:

ana min wilaayat New York. I am from the state of New York.

ana min madiinat Boston. I am from the city of Boston.

5. The four seasons are:

as-seef summer
as-sita winter
ar-rabii9 spring
al-xariif fall

as-seef al-maaqi last summer
as-seef al-jayy next summer
(etc.)

الصيف
الشتا
الربيع
الخريف

In Saudi Arabia, one rarely refers to spring and fall.

6. /simi9t kida/, 'I've heard that', and /giriit kida/'I've read that', are idioms. /kida/ may be used in this way with other types of verbs to mean 'I thought so', 'I hoped so', 'I feared that', etc.

simi9t kida. I've heard that.
giriit kida. I've read that.
a9taqid kida. I believe so.

7. /simi9/ is used with /9an/ to express 'to hear about':

simi9t 9annu. I've heard about him.
simi9t 9an al-ma9ruu9. I've heard about the project.

8. The expression /ta9baan 9wayya/, literally, 'a little tired', is often used as a euphemism to mean 'sick'. (The word is /marii9/, but this usually means it is quite serious.)

9. When someone mentions illness, the appropriate statement is:

salaamatak your (m) safety
salaamatu his safety
salaamatha her safety
(etc.)

The response is:

allaah yisallimak [May] God make you (m) safe.
allaah yisallimik [May] God make you (f) safe.
allaah yisallimkum [May] God make you (p) safe.

Vocabulary Notes

at9awwad, yit9awwid get used to, become
(9ala) accustomed to
simi9, yisma9 hear
giri, yigra (giriit) read
a9taqad, ya9taqid believe

اتعود يتمود (على)

سمع يسمع
قري يقرى (قرئت)
اعتقد يعتقد

faṣl, fuṣuul
wilaaya, -aat

season, class
state (of the U.S.A.)

فصل
ولايات

Drills

1. The weather is hot.

al-jaww Harr.

الجو حر

Substitute:

cold
moderate
sunny
very hot
like winter
bad
pleasant

2. You [will] get used
to it.

tit9awwid 9alee.

تعود عليه

Substitute:

he
we
she
they
you (f)
you (p)
the children
the foreigners

3. It's like the
southwest United
States.

zayy januub qharb
al-wilaayaat
al-muttaHida.

زي جنوب غرب الولايات
المتحدة

Substitute:

north
east
south
northeast
west
southwest

4. In the north the
weather is cold in
winter.

fiṣ-ṣamaal ad-dunya
bard fiṣ-ṣita.

في الشمال الدنيا برد
في الشتاء

Substitute:

in the fall
in the spring
in the west
warm
in the summer
in the fall
in the east
cold
pleasant
in the winter
in the north
cold

5. I've read about it. giriit 9annu.

قرأت عنه

Substitute:

we
she
will read
he
you (m)
must read
they
you (p)
did not read
you (f)
I
they

6. I'm cold. ana bardaan.

انا بردان

Substitute:

wrong
tired
we
hot
hungry
thirsty
sick
he
a little hungry
very hungry
they
cold
wrong
thirsty
hot

Situations

1.
 - A. Do you know that summer is very hot in Saudi Arabia?
 - B. Yes, I've read that (/kida/). But I like the heat (/al-Harr/). And you?
 - A. No, but I got used to it.
 - B. Which season is best here?
 - A. The winter, that is (/ya9ni/), December, January, and February.
2.
 - A. Where are you going?
 - B. To visit a Saudi family which I met in America. Would you like to come?
 - A. Certainly. This will be the first time [that] I visit a Saudi home.
 - B. They have heard about you, and they want to meet you.
3.
 - A. The account is not correct.
 - B. I'm sorry, I'm wrong. I forgot that you paid last week.
 - A. Never mind. How is your health? Better, if God wills?
 - B. A little, but I'm still tired.
 - A. Really? "Hope you're feeling better soon".
 - B. "Thanks".

LESSON 35

Dialogue

rain	maṭar	مطر
A. Is there rain in Jidda?	fii maṭar fi jidda?	فيه مطر في جدة؟
mountains	jibaal	جبال
B. Never. But there is rain in Taif, in the mountains.	muu katiir. laakin fii maṭar fiṭ-ṭaayif, fiil-jibaal.	مو كثير. لكن فيه مطر في الطائف، في الجبال.
A. Mountains?	al-jibaal?	الجبال؟
desert	ṣaḥra	صحرا
seacoasts	ṣawaṭi'	شواطئ
B. Of course. Saudi Arabia is not all desert[s] and seacoasts.	ṭab9an. as-su9uudiyya mahi kullaha ṣaḥra wu ṣawaṭi'.	طبعاً. السعودية مهي كلها صحرا وشواطئ.
always	dayman	دائماً
they think	yiṣunnu	يظنون
composed of	9ibaara 9an	عبارة عن
sand	raml	رمل
oases	waaḥaat	واحات
palm trees	naxil	نخل
A. Foreigners always think that it is composed of desert, sand, oases, and palm trees.	al-ajaanib dayman yiṣunnu annaha 9ibaara 9an ṣaḥra wu raml wu waaḥaat wu naxil.	الاجانب دائماً يظنون أنها عبارة عن صحرا ورمل وواحات ونخل.
rivers	anhaar	انهار
areas, regions	manaṭiḡ	مناطق
agricultural	ziraa9iyya	زراعية
B. That's true, but there are also rivers and agricultural areas.	haada ṣaḥiḥ, laakin fii kamaan anhaar wu manaṭiḡ ziraa9iyya.	هكذا صحيح لكن فيه كمان انهار ومناطق زراعية.

Structure Sentences

1. We go to Taif usually in the summer.	niruuH aṭ-ṭaayif 9aadatan fiṣ-ṣeef.	نروح الطائف عادة في الصيف.
2. There is never [any] snow.	ma fii talj abadan.	ما فيه ثلج ابداً.
3. He never went. (He has never gone.)	ma raah abadan.	ما راح ابداً.
4. I have never met the prince.	ma gaabalt al-amiir abadan.	ما قابلت الامير ابداً.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 5. The trees are green. | aš-šajar axḡar. | الشجر اخضر. |
| 6. The flowers are pretty. | al-ward Hilu. | الورد حلو. |
| 7. I want to buy three flowers. | abgha aštari talaata wuruud. | ابغش اشترى ثلاثة ورود. |

Grammatical Notes

1. /abadan/ is used with a negative verb (cf. Structure Sentences 2 and 3).
2. Arabic has, in addition to singular, dual, and plural nouns, a special "collective plural" for some nouns. Most collective plurals are formed by omitting the /-a/ feminine ending of a singular noun:

warda	a flower	وردة
ward	flowers	ورد
šajara	a tree	شجرة
šajar	trees	شجر
naxla	a palmtree	نخلة
naxil	palmtrees	نخل
leemuuna	a lemon	ليمونة
leemuun	lemons	ليمون

The collective plural is always masculine singular:

al-ward Hilu.	The flowers are pretty.
aš-šajar axḡar.	The trees are green.
an-naxil kabiir wu Hilu.	The palmtrees are big and pretty.
al-leemuun raxiiṣ.	The lemons are cheap.

When the noun is "counted" with a numeral, it takes its regular plural:

abgha aštari talaata wuruud.	I want to buy three flowers.
fii arba9a naxlaat kubaar wara beeti.	There are four big palmtrees behind my house.

The collective plural is used when referring to a group of things in general, whereas the "counted" plural is used with numerals. Collective plurals are also used when buying something by weight, e.g., "a kilo of lemons" (/kiilu leemuun/). They are especially common for all types of foods which are measured by weight or volume, and more will be introduced in Lesson 37.

Vocabulary Notes

jabal, jibaal	mountain	جبل
nahar, anhaar	river	نهر
šaati', šawaati'	seacoast	شاطئ
šaHra, šaHaari	desert	صحراء
manṭiga, manaatiḡ	area, region	منطقة
šajara, ašjaar	tree	شجرة
naxla, -aat	palmtree	نخلة
warda, wuruud	flower	وردة
waaHa, -aat	oasis	واحة
ḡann, yiḡunn (ḡanneet)	think	ظن بظن (ظنيت)

Drills

1. Is there rain in Jidda? fii maṭar fi jidda? فيه مطر في جدة؟

Substitute:

in Riyadh
snow
in Saudi Arabia
in the mountains
sun
at the seacoast
rain
cold
in the city

2. It ('she') is composed of desert. hiyya 9ibaara 9an ṣaHra. هي عبارة عن صحراء.

Substitute:

sand
palmtrees
seacoasts
oases
mountains
many trees
cities
rivers
agricultural areas
desert

3. We usually go in the summer. niruuH 9aadatan fiṣ-ṣeef. نروح عادة في الصيف.

Substitute:

in the winter
in the fall
every year
in the spring
always
early in the year
twice
in the middle of the summer
in April

4. He never went. ma raaH abadan. ما راح ابداً.

Substitute:

traveled
bought a television
met the prince
drove
cleaned the car
taught Arabic
finished his education
visited me
said that (/kida/)

5. Given the singular noun, change it to collective plural and then counted plural:

naxla
šajara
warda
leemuuna

نخلة
شجرة
وردة
ليمونة

6. The trees are green. aš-šajar axḡar.

الشجر اخضر.

Substitute:

palm trees
pretty
flowers
red
yellow
big
trees
expensive
lemons
cheap
green
small
palm trees
numerous ('many')
tall

Situations

1.
 - A. How is the weather in Yemen?
 - B. It is always very cold in the winter because Yemen consists of many mountains. There is rain and snow, too.
 - A. Really? I thought it was ('is') a desert.
 - B. Not at all! (/abadan/) There are rivers and trees and many large agricultural areas in the west. The desert is in the middle and in the east.
 - A. I would like to visit Sanaa.
 - B. I hope you can.
2.
 - A. Are you going to the beach this Friday?
 - B. I think we'll go to the desert. The children like the sand. My wife will prepare (/tisawwi/) food for us.
 - A. Excellent. There is an oasis near here.
 - B. Like the oases in the Eastern Region?
 - A. Bigger and prettier. There is a river and flowers.
 - B. Good. I'll tell my wife.

LESSON 36

Dialogue

(At the tailor)

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| I need ('needing') | miHtaaɟ | محتاج |
| suit | badla | بدلة |
| cotton | guɟun | قطن |
| A. I need a new cotton suit. | ana miHtaaɟ li badla guɟun jadiida. | انا محتاج لبدلة قطن جديدة. |
| B. Welcome. Any service. | ahlan wu sahlán. ayy xidma. | اهلا وسهلا اي خدمة |
| jacket | ɟakitta | جكته |
| (pair of) trousers | banɟaloon | بنطلون |
| A. I want a jacket and two trousers. | abgha ɟakitta wu banɟalooneen. | ايهني جكته و بنطلونين. |
| size | magaas | مقاس |
| B. Let me take your measurements. | xalliini aaxud magaasak. | خليني آخذ مقاسك. |
| sleeves | akmaam | اكمام |
| narrow | ɟayyig | ضيق |
| A. I want the jacket longer than that. And the sleeves narrow. | abgha al-ɟakitta aɟwal min kida. wu l-akmaam ɟayyiga. | ايهني الجكته اطول من كده. والاكمام ضيقة. |
| you (m) measure | tigiis | تقيس |
| B. Fine. Come for a fitting ('to "measure" it') next week. | ɟayyib. taɟaal ɟaɟaan tigiisaha l-usbuuɟ al-ɟayy. | طيب. تعال عشان تقيسها الاسبوع الجي. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. She is a seamstress. | hiyya xayyaafa. | هي خياطة. |
| 2. He is sewing the vest now. | huwwa ɟammaalyixayyit as-sideeri daɟɟiin. | هو عمال يخييط السديري رحين. |
| 3. Leave the pants wide at the bottom. | siib al-banɟaloon waasiɟ min taɟat. | سيب البنطلون واسع من تحت. |
| 4. This shirt is [too] tight. | haada l-gamiiɟ ɟayyig. | هادا القميص ضيق. |
| 5. I want to buy a leather belt. | abgha aɟtari Hizaam jild. | ايهني اشتري حزام جلد. |

6. I don't need anything else. mana miHtaaj šayy taani. منا محتاج شي ثاني.
7. I have to measure it. laazim agiisu. لازم اقيسه.

Grammatical Notes

1. 'To need' is expressed with the active participle /miHtaaj/, 'needing', sometimes used with the preposition /l-/ (/li-/):

ana miHtaaj li badla guṭun jadiida.	I need a new cotton suit.
hiyya miHtaaja musaa9ada.	She needs help.
ana kunt miHtaajlu.	I needed him.
iHna miHtaajiinlu.	We need him.

2. Adjectives of "quality" which describe the material of which something consists are used in the masculine singular form only:

badla guṭun	a cotton suit
šanta jild	a leather purse
Hizaam jild	a leather belt
fustaan šuuf	a wool dress
fasaatiin šuuf	wool dresses

Note that these nouns are not in a construct state.

3. In English we say "a pair of pants", "a pair of shoes", etc., making the noun plural. In Arabic, it is expressed as singular:

abgha banṭaloon jadiid.	I want a new [pair of] pant[s].
aštareet jazma sooda.	I bought black shoe[s].
aštareet jizam katiir.	I bought many [pairs of] shoes.
feen jazmati?	Where are my shoes?

4. /9ammaal/ is also used before verbs to indicate an on-going action. It is not conjugated:

huwwa 9ammaal yixayyiṭ.	He is sewing.
hiyya 9ammaal titkallam.	She is talking.

Vocabulary Notes

waasi9, -iin*	wide
ḍayyig, -iin*	narrow
sahl, -iin*	easy
ša9b, -iin*	difficult, hard
miHtaaj, -iin	needing, in need of
gaas, yigiis (gist)	measure, try on
xayyaṭ, yixayyiṭ	sew

واسع - ين
ضيق - ين
سهل - ين
صعب - ين
محتاج - ين
قاس يقيس (تست)
خيط يخيط

magaas, -aat
xayyaat, -a, -iin

size
tailor, seamstress

مقاس - ات
خياط - ين

badla, bidal
jakitta, -aat
banjaloon, -aat
gamiis, gumsaan
karafiitta, -aat
fustaan, fasaatiin
bluuzaa, -aat
kumm, akmaam
jazma, jizam

suit
jacket
trousers
shirt
necktie
dress
blouse
sleeve
shoes

بدلة - بدل
جكته - ات
بنطلون - ات
قميص - قمصان
كرفته - ات
فستان - فساتين
بلوزة - ات
كم - اكمام
جزمة - جزم

*Since these words refer to inanimate nouns, the plural usually heard is /-a/.

Drills

1. I need a new cotton
suit.

ana miHtaaj li badla guṭun
jadiida.

انا محتاج لبدلة قطن
جديدة.

Substitute:

wool suit
wool jacket
lightweight jacket
lightweight [pair of] trousers
pair of shoes
shirt
cotton shirts
leather belt

2. I want a jacket.

abgha jakitta.

ابغى جكته.

Substitute:

two trousers
two shirts
a long dress
a blue necktie
a leather suitcase
a smaller size

3. I want the jacket
longer than that.

abgha al-jakitta aṭwal
min kida.

ابغى الجكته اطول
من كده.

Substitute:

shorter
heavier
wider
the belt
cheaper
prettier
the blouse
smaller

4. He is sewing the vest
now.

huwwa 9ammaal yixayyit
as-sideeri daHHiin.

هو عمال يخييط السديري
الحين.

Substitute:

the dress
she
is finishing
is cleaning
the shoes
the suitcase
I
the belt
the trousers

5. Leave the pants wide at the bottom. siib al-banṭaloon waasi9 min taḤat.

سبب البنطلون واسع
من تحت

Substitute:

narrow
at the top (/min foog/)
sleeve
at the bottom
wide
dress
short

Situations

1.
 - A. Can you (f) make ('sew') me a dress?
 - B. Yes, which material?
 - A. I need a cotton dress because the weather is [so] hot now.
 - B. That will be easy. Let me take your (f) measurements.
 - A. Can you make it quickly?
 - B. If God wills, in two days ('after two days').
2.
 - A. I heard that prices are good in that store.
 - B. Yes, especially ties and shirts.
 - A. Let's go ask.
 - B. OK, I can put the car here.
 - A. "No standing" here. Try that place.
 - B. No, that's [too] hard.
 - A. Wait for me. I'll go in and ask and come back quickly.
3.
 - A. I'm thirsty. [Shall] we go and drink something?
 - B. OK. The weather is sunny, especially in the afternoon.
 - A. It's always like this (/kida/) in the summer. But in the mountains it's moderate. We must visit Taif.
 - B. I agree. I have wanted ('want') to see Taif since last year.

LESSON 37

Dialogue

(An invitation to dinner)

meat	laHam	لحم
A. Welcome. Go ahead [and have some of] the meat.	ahlan wu sahan. atfaḍḍal al-laHam.	اهلا وسهلا . اتفضل اللحم
delicious	ṭi9im	طعم
rice	ruzz	رز
B. Thank you. It's delicious. And the rice, too.	ṣukran. huwwa ṭi9im. w ar-ruzz kamaan.	شكرا . هو طعم . والرز كمان
strength	9aafiya	عافية
you (m) honored	ṣarraft	شرفت
A. To your strength. You have honored us.	bil-9aafiya. ṣarraftana.	بالعافية . شرفتنا .
table (of food)	sufra	سفرة
eternal	daayma	دائمة
B. I am honored. That's enough, thanks be to God. [May your] table always be thus.	ṣukran, kifaaya, al-Hamdu lillaah. sufra daayma.*	شكرا ، كفاية الحمد لله . سفرة دائمة .
presence	wujuud	وجود
A. Due to your presence.	b-wujuudakum.	بوجودكم .

*Also commonly said to the host is /9aamir/, 'filled'.

Structure Sentences

1. The food was placed on the table.	al-akl anḥaṭṭ 9as-sufra.	الاكل انحط عالسفرة .
2. The money was spent.	al-fuluus anṣarafat.	الفلوس انصرفت .
3. The money must be spent.	al-fuluus laazim tinṣarif.	الفلوس لازم تنصرف .
4. May your hands be blessed (literally, 'made safe').	tislam iideekum.	تسلم ايديكم .
5. Don't trouble yourself.	laa tita99ib nafsak.	لا تتعب نفسك .
6. Not at all--it's no trouble.	abadan--ma fii ta9b.	ابدا . ما فيه تعب .
7. The food is excellent.	al-akl mumtaaz.	الاكل ممتاز .
8. Eat [some] grapes.	kul 9inab.	كل عنب .

9. I bought a lemon. aštareet Habba leemuun. اشتريت حبة ليمون.
 10. He talked to himself. kallam nafsu. كلم نفسه.

Grammatical Notes

1. The passive verb in Saudi Arabic can be expressed in several ways. The most frequent is the use of the prefix /an-/ or /at-/ with the perfect tense, which becomes infixed (in the middle of the word) in the imperfect tense. It is a regular pattern:

anšaraf, yinšarif	be spent
anfataH, yinfatiH	be opened
ankatab, yinkatib	be written

Other types of verbs:

anHaṭṭ, yinHaṭṭ	be put, placed
anšaaf, yinšaaf	be seen
atšarraḥ, yitšarrif	be honored

You cannot predict which prefix will be used with each verb, so you should learn each passive verb separately. However, the /an-/ prefix is much more common.

Quite rare is a passive expressed with an active-form verb, but it occurs sometimes in classicized expressions (it is also a rare pattern in Classical Arabic):

tislaḥ iideekum. May your hands be blessed.

The passive verb is conjugated for all persons, and is of course derived from transitive verbs (which take an object). Not all verbs can be made passive; it is a matter of style that some expressions are simply always said in the active voice, for example:

jaabu. It was brought. ('He brought it'.)

(/anjaab/ is grammatically correct but sounds unnatural in style.)

Some of the most common passive verbs are:

ankatab, yinkatib	be written	انكتب ينكتب
anfataH, yinfatiH	be opened	انفتح يفتح
angafal, yingafil	be closed	انغفل يغل
anšaraf, yinšarif	be spent	انصرف ينصرف
anʿamal, yinʿamil	be done	انعمل يعمل
anšaaf, yinšaaf	be seen	انشاف ينشاف
anša'al, yinša'al	be carried	انشال ينشال
ansaab, yinsaab	be left behind	انساب ينساب
anHaṭṭ, yinHaṭṭ	be put, placed	انحط ينحط
atšarraḥ, yitšarrif	be honored	اتشرف يشرف
at9arraḥ, yit9arrif	be introduced	اتعرف يتعرف
at9awwad, yit9awwid	be accustomed	اتعود يتعود
at9allam, yit9allim	be educated	اتعلم يتعلم

2. /sufra/ refers to a dining table, or more precisely, the top of it or the place where food is spread out. /ṭarabiiza/ refers to any table.

3. /iideen/, 'hands' (literally, 'two hands') becomes /iidee-/ before pronoun endings. There is an alternative way to say 'hands' (discussed in Lesson 44), but this form is used for this expression.

tislam iideekum.	May your (p) hands be blessed.
tislam iideek.	May your (m) hands be blessed.
tislam iideeki.	May your (f) hands be blessed.

This expression is used to compliment the quality of something which has been produced by someone's hands. You will hear it used most often referring to food.

4. The expression presented in Structure Sentence 5 is very commonly said by a guest to his host. Structure Sentence 6 is the conventional response.

5. The word /Habba/ means 'one' or 'a piece'. It is used referring to items of food.

Habba leemuun	one lemon
Habba Halaawa	a piece of candy
Habba tuffaaH	an apple

6. To express 'self' as the reflexive object ('I hurt myself', etc.), /nafs-/ is used with pronoun endings:

nafsu	himself	نفسه
nafsaha	herself	نفسها
nafsahum	themselves	نفسهم
nafsak	yourself (m)	نفسك
nafsik	yourself (f)	نفسك
nafsakum	yourselves	نفسكم
nafsi	myself	نفسي
nafsana	ourselves	نفسنا
laa tita99ib nafsak.	Don't trouble ('tire') yourself (m).	
laa tita99ibi nafsik.	Don't trouble yourself (f).	
laa tita99ibu nafsakum.	Don't trouble yourselves.	
kallam nafsu.	He talked to himself	
kallamat nafsaha.	She talked to herself.	

Vocabulary Notes

(Words given as collective plurals)

Meats (laHam, luHuum)

dajaaJ, -aat	chicken
xaruuf, xirfaan	lamb
samak, asmaak	fish
laHam bagar	beef ('cow meat')

لحم لحوم
دجاج -ات
خروف خرفان
سمك اسماك
لحم بقر

Vegetables (xuḍaar)

baṣal	onions
baṭaaṭis	potatoes
ṭamaaṭim	tomatoes
bazaaliya	peas
faaṣuuliyya xadṛa	green beans
xiyaar	cucumbers
xaṣṣ	lettuce

خضار
بصل
بطاطس
طماطم
بازاليا
فاصوليا خضرا
خيار
خس

Fruits (faakha, fawaakih)

فاكهة فواكه

9inab	grapes	عنب
burtukaan	oranges	برتقال
tuffaaH	apples	تفاح
balaH	red dates	بلح
tamur	dried dates	تمر
mooz	bananas	موز

Other

xubz	bread	خبز
zibda	butter	زبد
ruzz	rice	رز
beeḍ	eggs	بيضة
ṣalaṭa	salad	سلطة
milH	salt	ملح
filfil	pepper	فلفل

ṣarraḥ, yiṣarrif	honor	شرف يشرف
at9arraḥ, yit9arrif (9ala)	to be introduced to, become acquainted with	اتعرف بتعرف (على)
ta99ab, yita99ib	tire, bother	تعب يتعب
akal, yaakul	eat	أكل يأكل
ṭi9im, -a, -iin*	delicious	لحم -ين

*The plural form /ṭi9miin/ may refer to people, for example, children, and mean 'lovely'.

Drills

1. Go ahead [and have some] meat. atfaḍḍal al-laḥam. اتفضل اللحم

Substitute:

the chicken
the fish
the salad
the dates
the potatoes
the lamb
the butter

2. You (m) have honored us. ṣarraḥṭana.* شرفتنا
- you (f)
you (p)

*This expression is usually used with 'us'.

3. Given the verb in the active voice, change it to passive (perfect and imperfect).

Example: katab → ankatab, yinkatib كتب ← انكتب ينكتب

Continue:

gafal
ṣaaf
Haṭṭ
saab
ḡarraḡ
ḡallam
ṣaraḡ
ḡamal
ṣarraḡ
ḡawwad
fataḡ
ṣaal

قفل
شاف
حظ
ساب
عرف
علم
صرف
عمل
شرف
عود
فتح
شال

4. The food was placed on the table. al-akl anHaṭṭ ḡas-sufra.

الاكل انحط عالسفرة.

Substitute:

the rice
the water
the salad
the tea
the salt
the coffee
the sugar
the fruit

5. The money must be spent.

al-fuluus laazim tinṣarif..

الفلوس لازم تنصرف

Substitute:

be removed (use /ṣaal/)
the food
be put [down]
the books
be opened
be carried
the boy
be educated
be introduced to the man
I
become accustomed to the weather

6. He talked to himself. kallam nafsu.

كلم نفسه .

Substitute:

she
I
we
saw
they
you (m)
heard
you (f)
he
the children
cleaned
tired

Situations

1.
 - A. Welcome! Sit down and eat with us.
 - B. Thanks. I'm a little hungry.
 - A. Have more rice ('rice also'). You have honored us.
 - B. I'm honored. The food is delicious. Bless your (p) hands.
 - A. Thanks. Due to your presence. Welcome.
 - B. I hope you (p) honor me in my home soon.
 - A. Have [some] again.
 - B. No, thanks. Thanks be to God, I've eaten enough.
2.
 - A. I'm going to the souk.
 - B. To buy food?
 - A. Yes, [some] vegetables and fruits. What would you like?
 - B. Buy bananas, also onions and potatoes. And bread, of course. But don't tire yourself.
 - A. I'll be back ('return') soon, if God wills.
 - B. Goodby.
 - A. Goodby.

Cultural Notes

1. An Arab host repeats phrases of welcome to his guest frequently, and presses food on him. Many polite expressions are exchanged. Since the host will continue to insist that you eat more and more, take small amounts of food at the beginning; you will probably be expected to eat three courses. Go hungry; eating a lot is one way to express appreciation for the food, and helps the host display his generosity and hospitality.

Before eating, Saudis often say the phrase /bism illaah ar-raHmaan ar-raHiim/, 'In the name of God, the Merciful, and Compassionate'. After the meal it is customary to say /al-Hamdu lillaah/ (or /al-Hamdu lillaah wu šukran/). The dialogue presented in this lesson reflects the routine expressions used between the host and guests during a typical meal.

LESSON 38

Dialogue

(In a restaurant)

requests	ṭalabaat	طلبات
A. May I help you? (literally, 'What are your requests?')	eeṣ ṭalabaatakum?*	ايشر طلباتكم؟
menu	lista	لستة
lunch	ghada	غدا
B. A menu, please. I'd like to order lunch.	al-lista, min faḍlak. aHubb aṭlub ghada.	اللستة من فضلك. احب اطلب غدا.
fresh	ṭaaza	طازة
A. Today we have fresh fish.	al-yoom 9indana samak ṭaaza.	اليوم عندنا سمك طازة.
B. OK. And bring techina and salad, and a Pepsi.	ṭayyib. wu jiib ṭaHiina wu ṣaḷaṭa wu bibsi-kuula.	طيب. وجيب طحينية وصلطة وببسي كولا.
dessert (literally, 'something sweet')	ṣayy Hilu	شي حلو
A. Right away. Would you like dessert?	Haaḍir. tibgha ṣayy Hilu?	حاضر. تبغ شي حلو؟
check ('account')	Hisaab	حساب
the change ('the rest')	al-baagi	الباقى
B. Baklawa, and then bring the check. Keep the change.	baglaawa, wu ba9deen jiib al-Hisaab. xalli l-baagi lak.	بقلاوة، وبعددين جيب الحساب خل الباقي لك.

*An alternative opening statement is /ayy xidma lakum?/, 'Any service for you?'.

Structure Sentences

1. I'd like to order dinner.	aHubb aṭlub 9aṣa.	احب اطلب عشا.
2. What time is breakfast?	as-saa9a kam al-faṭuur?	الساعة كم الفطور؟
3. The tip is 15%.	al-xidma xamaṣṭa9ṣ fil-miyya.**	الخدمة خمستعشر في المئة.
4. He is a good writer.	huwwa ṣufraji ṭayyib.	هو صفرجي طيب.
5. I ate in the same restaurant.	akalt fi rafs al-maṭ9am.	اكلت في نفس المطعم.
6. We arrived at the same time.	waṣalna fi nafs al-wagt.	وصلنا في نفس الوقت.

7. Let's go to his house xalliina niruHlu marra. خلبنا نروحله مرة.
('to him') some time.
8. We ate stuffed peppers akalna filfil maHši wu kabaab. اكلنا فلفل محشي
and shish kabob. وكباب.

**Another common word for 'tip' is /baxšiis/.

Grammatical Notes

1. /ṭaaza/, 'fresh', is not declined for gender or number.

2. To express 'per cent', use /fil-miyya/:

xamaṣṭa9ṣ fil-miyya	15%
xamsa wu 9iṣriin fil-miyya	25%
miyya fil-miyya	100%

3. /al-baagi/ literally means 'the rest', 'the remaining'. The word for 'change' (money) is /fakka/.

4. Some of the more common Saudi dishes are:

maHši (bidinjaan, kuusa, filfil)	stuffed (eggplant, squash, peppers) (etc.)	محشي (بدنجان، كوسا، فلفل)
kabaab	shish kabob	كباب
kufta	ground spiced meat	كفتة
ṣayaadiyya	fish, onions, and rice	صياضية
maṣwi (dajaaṣ, xaruuf)	grilled (chicken, lamb)	مشوي (دجاج، خروف)
ṭaḥiina	sesame dip	طحينة
ruzz 9adas	rice with lentils	رز عدس
saliig	rice cooked with milk and meat	سليق
baglaawa	baklava (syrup-covered pastry)	بقلاوة

5. /nafs/ may be used with a definite noun to mean 'same':

nafs al-maṭ9am	the same restaurant
fi nafs al-wagt	at the same time

6. /marra/, 'occasion', may be used alone to mean 'some time':

xalliina niruHlu marra.	Let's go to his place some time.
-------------------------	-------------------------------------

Vocabulary Notes

lista, lisat	menu	لستة لست
ṣufraji, -yiin	waiter	صفرجي -يين
maṭ9am, maṭaa9im	restaurant	مطعم - مطاعم

Drills

1. I'd like to order lunch. aḤubb aṭlub għada. احب اطلب غدا.

Substitute:

dinner
we
breakfast
they
lunch
I

2. Today we have fresh fish. al-yoom 9indana samak taaza. اليوم عندنا سمك طازجة.

Substitute:

shish kabob
stuffed peppers
chicken and rice
grilled lamb

3. The tip is 15%. al-xidma xamasta9% fil-miyya. الخدمة خمستعشر في المئة.

Substitute:

50%
25%
10%
5%

4. I ate in the same restaurant. akalt fi nafs al-maṭ9am. اكلت في نفس المطعم.

Substitute:

at the same time
in the same house
with the same man
in the same room
the same food yesterday

5. Let's go to his place some time. niruHlu marra. نروح له مرة.

Substitute:

let's visit him
let's eat there
let's try to go
let's travel together
let's clean the car
let's talk to the director
let's send them a letter
let's practice

Situations

- 1.
- A. A menu, please. We'd like to order dinner.
- B. Right away. We have Arab food here.
- A. Do you have grilled chicken?
- B. Of course. We have grilled lamb for the same price.
- A. (to his wife): What would you like?
- C. Lamb. And stuffed squash. And bread and butter.

- A. I, too. How much is the tip?
C. Between ten and fifteen per cent. 15% is better.
A. (to the waiter) Keep the change.
2.
A. Did your family go to the seashore last Friday?
B. Yes, we all went in the same car. We have a cabin (/kabiina/) there.
A. I heard that there is a restaurant there.
B. Yes, they have French food.
A. I'll try to go with you (p) the next time. Don't forget to tell me.
B. Welcome, any time. The children send their greetings ('greet you').
3.
A. What time is lunch?
B. Lunch in the hotel restaurant is from 12:00 to 3:00.
A. Are the waiters good?
B. Yes, the service (/xidma/) is excellent.
A. Let's go there some time.
B. OK, maybe tomorrow.

LESSON 39

Dialogue

(At a fruit stand)

kilo	kiilu	كيلو
A. I want to buy a kilo of oranges.	abgha aštari kiilu burtukaan.	ابغى اشترى كيلو برتكان.
B. [They are] three riyals a kilo.	al-kiilu b-talaata riyaal.	الكيلو بثلاثة ريال.
A. Not cheaper than that?	muu arxaş min kida?	مو ارخص من كده؟
not	la'	لا
B. Of course not, madam.	ṭab9an la' ya sitt.*	طبعاً لا يا ست.
A. Do you have change for ('of') fifty riyals?	9indak fakkat xamsiin riyaal?	عندك فكة خمسين ريال؟
sorrow	asaf	اسف
you (f) change	tişrufi	تصرفي
moneychanger	şarraaf	صراف
B. No, unfortunately. ('with sorrow'). You can change your money at the moneychanger's.	la', ma9a l-asaf. mumkin tişrufi fuluusik 9ind aş-şarraaf.	لا مع الاسف ممكن تصرفي فلوسك عند الصراف.

*Also commonly heard is /ya madaam/.

Structure Sentences

1. I'll take two and one-half meters.	aaxud mitreen wu nuşş.	أخذ مترين ونصف
2. Give me two kilos.	addiini itneen kiilu.	اديني اثنين كيلو
3. Its weight is three pounds.	waznu talaata arṭaal.	وزنه ثلاثة أرطال
4. What is the width of this fabric?	kam 9arḍ haada l-gumaaş?	كم عرض هادا القماش؟
5. Why not?	leeş la'?	ليش لا؟
6. I want to change the appointment.	abgha aghayyir al-maw9ad.	ابغى اغير الموعد
7. Give me a dozen pens.	addiini dastat aglaam.	اديني دسنة اقلام

Grammatical Notes

1. Some nouns of measurement are used only in the singular:
- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| addiini itneen kiilu. | Give me two kilos. |
| addiini talaata kiilu. | Give me three kilos. |

addiini kiilu wu rub9. Give me one and one-
quarter kilos.
addiini 9ašara ghraam. Give me ten grams.

Nouns of measurement which do not change form are:

kiilu	kilo
ghraam	gram
litir	liter
šanti	centimeter
buuša	inch

كيلو
غرام
لتر
صنطي
برصة

Some nouns of measurement are declined for dual and plural:

aaxud mitreen wu nušš. I'll take two and one-
half meters.
aaxud talaata amṭaar. I'll take three meters.
waznu talaata arṭaal. Its weight is three pounds.

These nouns are:

mitir, amṭaar	meter
raṭl, arṭaal	pound
yarda, -aat	yard
gadam, agdaam	foot
dasta, -aat	dozen

متر
رطل
يارد
قدم
دستة

2. /ṭab9an la'/, 'of course not', is an example of using /la'/ to mean 'not'.
(We have already seen /walla la'?, 'or not?'). Other structures like this are

leeš la'?	Why not?
ažuun la'.	I think not; I don't think so.
huwwa raaH w ana la'.	He went and I didn't.

3. /ghayyar/, 'to change', is used in the sense of changing an appointment,
your clothes, an idea, etc. For money, you use /šaraḥ, yišruf/, or also /fakk,
yifukk/, literally, 'to take apart':

fakkeet fuluusi. I changed my money.

4. /šarraaf/ is an example of a noun which describes employment. Such nouns
may be formed from verb root consonants, with the vowel pattern: C₁aC₂C₂aaC₃.
Some common nouns formed on this pattern are:

Noun		Related Word	
šarraaf	'money changer'	šaraḥ	'spend'
sawwaag	'driver'	saag	'drive'
xayyaaṭ	'tailor'	xayyaṭ	'sew'
ṭabbaax	'cook'	ṭabax	'cook'
najjaar	'carpenter'	najar	'hew, carve'
xabbaaz	'baker'	xubz	'bread'
xaddaam	'servant'	xidma	'service'
Hammaal	'porter'	Hamal	'carry'
jazzaar	'butcher'	jazar	'slaughter'
baggaal	'grocer'	(none in common use)	
jarraaH	'surgeon'	jaraH	'wound'
fallaaH	'peasant'	falaH	'cultivate'

صراف
سواق
خباط
طباخ
نجار
خباز
خدام
حمال
جزار
بقال
جراح
فلاح

Vocabulary Notes

ghayyar, yighayyir
fakk, yifukk (fakkeet)
wazn, awzaan
tuul
9arq

change
change (money); take apart
weight
height, length
width

غير يغير
فك فك (فكيت)
وزن اوزان
طول
عرض

Drills

1. I want to buy a kilo
of oranges.

abgha aštari kiilu
burtukaan.

ابغى اشترى كيلو برتكان.

Substitute:

one-half kilo
two kilos
five kilos
one dozen
two dozen

2. Not cheaper than that?

muu arxaş min kida?

مو ارخص من كده؟

Substitute:

better
bigger
smaller
prettier
older
newer
more beautiful

3. Do you have change for
fifty riyals?

9indak fakkat xamsiin
riyaal?

عندك فكة خمسين ريال؟

Substitute:

50 dollars
35 dollars
you (p)
100 riyals
500 riyals
he
10 dollars

4. You (f) can change
your money at the
moneychanger's.

mumkin tişrufi fuluusik
9ind aš-şarraaf.

ممکن تصرفي فلوسك
عند الصرافه

Substitute:

you (m)
they
she
at the bank
you (p)
I
in the store
we
he
at the moneychanger's

5. I'll take two and one-half meters. aaxud mitreen wu nuss.

أخذ مترين ونصف

Substitute:

3 meters
1 meter
1/2 meter
1 meter and 10 centimeters
25 centimeters
1 yard
1 1/4 yards
6 inches
2 feet
3 feet
1 liter
4 1/2 liters

6. Ask the questions and then answer it.

Example: What is its weight? Its weight is three pounds.

kam waznu? → waznu talaata arṭaal.

كم وزنه؟ ← وزنه ثلاثة أرطال.

Continue:

What is its width?	2 1/2 meters.
What is its length?	1 yard and 5 inches.
What is its weight?	About 150 pounds.
What is its length?	3 1/4 feet.
What is its width?	40 centimeters.
What is its weight?	15 kilos and 200 grams.

7. He works as a driver. huwwa yiṣṭaghil sawwaag.

هو يشتغل سواق.

Substitute:

cook
servant
porter
tailor
carpenter
butcher

Situations

1.
 - A. I want to change my appointment with the minister.
 - B. OK, when would you like to come?
 - A. Give me an appointment the day after tomorrow.
 - B. Unfortunately he will be in Riyadh. Can you come Thursday?
 - A. I don't think so. I'll call you ('talk to you on the telephone').
 - B. Goodby.
2.
 - A. Let's go to the grocery store (/9ind al-baggaal/).
 - B. OK, I'll come with you.

- A. We want to buy two kilos of onions.
B. Anything else?
A. Do you have eggs?
B. Yes, how many dozen?
A. Two dozen are enough. Don't you have eggs bigger than that?
B. Yes, here. Just for you ('your sake').
A. Do you have change for 50 riyals?
B. Yes, ma'am. Any service.
3.
A. Please have some more [food]. (/atfaḍḍal kamaan/).
B. Thanks. Everything is delicious. A little rice, please.
A. No, you must eat more than that!
B. I can't, really (/wallah/). OK, a little meat, too. You're an excellent cook!
A. We're honored by your presence.
B. May your hands be blessed.
A. Thank you. Come again. (/atfaḍḍal taani/).
B. If God wills.

LESSON 40

Review last nine dialogues.

Supplementary Drills

1. I want to go to the desert. ana abgha aruUH aš-šaHra. ابغى ارجح الصحراء.

Substitute:

buy [some] material in the souk
finish my work early
find a bus stop near here
keep my car clean
pay my bill ('account')
ask him for help ('request from him help')
get accustomed to the heat
travel to Jordan
measure the rest
buy a ticket
exchange ('change') this jacket
buy a cotton jacket
get acquainted with him
eat at the new Italian restaurant
find a good carpenter

2. I heard that this restaurant is good. simi9t innu haada l-naṭ9am ṭayyib. سمعت انه هادرا المطعم طيب.

Substitute:

you (m) haven't paid the doctor's bill
his brother is a surgeon
the Eastern Region is very wide
he wants to buy a recorder
the test is hard
the food was delicious
the weather is moderate in Taif
she bought a meter of fabric
you have a new houseboy ('servant')
they changed the size
they are living in the south
the flowers are yellow in the desert
he explained the lesson to his younger brother (use /fahham/)
there are many peasants in the south

3. Answer the questions:

kam dafa9t lit-tilifizyoon Haggak?
tiHubb al-jaww hina?
b-kam litir al-banziin?
ruHt as-suug al-usbuu9 al-maadi?
9indak jawaaz safar su9uudi?
eeš akalt fil-fatuur?
kam magaas jazmatak?
tiHubb taakul fawaakih?

كم دفعت للتلفزيون حقا؟
تحب الجو هنا؟
بكم لتر البنزين؟
رجت السوق الاسبوع الماضي؟
عندك جواز سفر سعودي؟
ايش اكلت في الفطور؟
كم مفاس جزمتك؟
تحب تاكل فواكه؟

4. Respond to the statements and questions:

laazim asta'zin.
 waHaštani.
 as-salaamu 9aleekum.
 šabaaH al-xeer.
 tišbaH 9ala xeer.
 šukran.
 ma9a s-salaama.
 šloonak?
 ismaHli.
 aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyid šariif.
 rabbana yiwaffig.
 šarraftana.
 ahlan wu sahlān.
 atfaḍḍal.
 tislam iideek.
 marHaba.
 9an iznak.
 salaamatak.
 mabruuk.
 ana aasif.
 keef Haalak?
 huwwa yisallim 9aleek.

لازم استأذن.
 وحشتني.
 السلام عليكم.
 صباح الخير.
 تصبح على خير.
 شكرًا.
 مع السلامة.
 شلونك؟
 اسمحلي.
 أحب أعرفك على السيد شريف.
 ربنا يوفق.
 شرفتنا.
 أهلاً وسهلاً.
 اتفضل.
 تسلم أيديك.
 مرحباً.
 عن أذنك.
 سلامتك.
 مبروك.
 أنا أسف.
 كيف حالك؟
 هو يسلم عليك.

Narratives

1. I went to the souk today and bought two shirts--a blue one and a white one. They are lightweight cotton because [the] summer is coming and the weather is already hot. I also bought a blue blouse for my wife and a beautiful purse for my daughter. I talked to a friend who told me that the prices are high ('expensive') here, more than in Lebanon. But everything is available (/mawjuud/) in the souk.

2. You're a little tired? To your safety! If God wills you will be well tomorrow. Do you want [any] help in anything? Your friends asked about you this morning. Go ahead home--you need sleep. Telephone me later.

3. I want a kilo of sugar and a dozen eggs. Do you have fresh fruits? Where are these dates from? I heard that the best dates are in September. OK, give me only half a pound.

LESSON 41

Dialogue

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| I rent | asta'jir | استأجر |
| apartment | šagga | شقة |
| A. I want to rent an apartment. | abgha asta'jir šagga. | أبغى استأجر شقة. |
| if | iza | إذا |
| rent | iijaar | أيجار |
| B. I don't have any empty apartments now, but if you want a house, I heard that there is one for rent. | ma 9indi šugag faaḍya daHHiin, laakin iza tiHubb beet, ana simi9t innu fii waaHid lil-iijaar. | ما عندي شقق فارغة دحين، لكن إذا تحب بيت أنا سمعت أنه فيه واحد للإيجار. |
| A. How much is the rent? | kam al-iijaar? | كم الأيجار؟ |
| bedrooms | ghuraf noom | غرف نوم |
| B. It's expensive--about 3,000 riyals per month. [There are] in it three bedrooms. | huwwa ghaali--Hawaali talaata alaaf riyaal fiš-šahar. fii talaata ghuraf noom. | هو غالي. حوالي ثلاثة آلاف ريال في الشهر. فيه ثلاثة غرف نوم. |
| at the expense of | 9ala Hisaab | على حساب |
| A. OK, let's see it. My rent is at company expense. What's the address? | ṭayyib, xalliina nišuufu. iijaari 9ala Hisaab aš-šarika. eeš al-9inwaan? | طيب خلينا نشوفه. أيجاري على حساب الشركة. أيش العنوان؟ |
| hospital | mustašfa | مستشفى |
| B. I'm not sure. It's near the new hospital. | ana mana mit'akkid. gariib min al-mustašfa l-jadiid. | أنا منا متأكد. قريب من المستشفى الجديد. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. My rent is at government expense. | iijaari 9ala Hisaab al-Hukuuma. | أيجاري على حساب الحكومة. |
| 2. My address is on this card. | 9inwaani 9ala haada l-kart. | عنواني على هادا الكرت. |
| 3. I want a two-bedroom apartment. | abgha šagga b-ghurfateen noom. | أبغى شقة بغرفتين نوم. |
| 4. The kitchen is [too] small. | al-maṭbax šaghiir. | المطبخ صغير. |
| 5. Is there air-conditioning? | fii takyiif? | فيه تكييف؟ |

Grammatical Notes

1. /iza/, 'if', is used when speaking of the conditional present, past, or future:

iza tiHubb	if you like; if you would like
iza raaHu	if they went
iza niruuH bukra	if we go tomorrow

The word /law/, 'if', is used when speaking of the conditional which is "contrary to fact":

law raaHu	if they had gone (but they did not)
law kunt malik	if I were king

Using the conditional in Arabic is not difficult. Conditional structures may vary from the above rules, depending on the speaker (there is considerable variation in its use among the dialects of Arabic). For your own production, stay with the above rule and you will be correct. But you may also hear /iza/ used with the perfect verb even when referring to present or future:

iza Habbeet tiruuH	if you want to go
iza ruHna bukra	if we go tomorrow

Some speakers also use /law/ in this way:

law Habbeet tiruuH	if you want to go
law ruHna bukra	if we go tomorrow

2. Often used with the conditional are some "compounded" verb tenses, for example:

law ruHt, kunt wašalt daHHiin.	If I had gone, I would have arrived [by] now.
law 9irift, kunt gultalak.	If I had known, I would have told you.

For this tense, a form of /kaan/ is used with the perfect verb. It is also used as the "past perfect":

kaan raaH.	He had gone.
kaan giidu raaH.	He had already gone.
as-saa9a talaata, kunt kammalt ad-dars.	At three o'clock, I had finished the lesson.

The future form, /Ha-yikuun/, may be used with the perfect verb to form the "future perfect":

H-akuun ruHt.	I will have gone.
Ha-nikuun wašalna.	We will have arrived.
as-saa9a talaata H-akuun kammalt ad-dars.	At three o'clock, I will have finished the lesson.

4. Areas in a house are:

šaala	entrance area
ghurfat al-juluus	living room
šaloon	guests' receiving room
ghurfat as-sufra	dining room
ghurfat an-noom	bedroom
maṭbax	kitchen

صالة
غرفة الجلوس
صالون
غرفة السفرة
غرفة النوم
مطبخ

Hammaam
siib, asyaab
dulaab, dawaaliib
balakoona, -aat
garaaj
jineena, janaayin

bathroom
hall
closet
balcony
garage
garden

حمام
سيب اسباب
دولاب دواليب
بلكونة -ات
كراج
جنيئة جنابن

Vocabulary Notes

asta'jar, yista'jir
mustasfa, -yaat*
šagga, šugag

rent
hospital
apartment

استأجر يستأجر
مستشفى -يات
شقة شقق

*This word is masculine.

Drills

1. I want to rent an apartment.

abgha asta'jir šagga.

ابغى استأجر شقة.

Substitute:

a room
a house
a big house
a three-bedroom apartment
a house near the embassy
a house on Mecca Road
a small apartment

2. If you (m) want a house...

iza tiHubb beet...

إذا تحب بيت...

Substitute:

another apartment
you (m) find
we find
we need
a bigger house
a prettier house
they need
they buy
I buy
I want
you (f) want
you (m) want

3. My rent is at company expense.

iijaari 9ala Hisaab
aš-šarika.

ايجاري على حساب
الشركة.

Substitute:

government expense
my expense
my ticket
their expense
company expense
our room
our gasoline
my car's gasoline
government expense
my rent

4. The kitchen is small. al-maṭbax ṣaghiir.

المطبخ صغير

Substitute:

the closets
the living room
the children's bedroom
the dining room
large
the balcony
the kitchen
the bathroom

5. Is there airconditioning? fii takyiif?

فيه تكييف؟

Substitute:

a big garage
enough closets
a school nearby
a hospital nearby
a balcony
a place for my books
an address
airconditioning

Situations

1.
 - A. Will you rent a house here?
 - B. If my family arrives next month, I'll rent one. If they don't come, I'll wait.
 - A. Rent ('the rent') is expensive here.
 - B. Yes, many foreigners have come in the last two years, and there aren't any apartments or houses free.
2.
 - A. I need an apartment with (/b-/) airconditioning.
 - B. How many bedrooms?
 - A. Two are enough. And my wife wants a large kitchen and a balcony.
 - B. I know a new building. I forgot the address, but it is the tallest one, right behind the hospital.
 - A. Good. If I had known, I would have asked before this.

LESSON 42

Dialogue

window	šubbaak	شباك
A. Put the chair [over] there, next to the window.	Huṭṭ al-kursi hinaak, jamb aš-šubbaak.	حط الكرسي هناك، جنب الشباك.
sofa	kanaba	كنبه
B. And the sofa?	w al-kanaba?	والكنبه؟
wall	jadur	جدر
A. The sofa and tables by that wall.	al-kanaba w aṭ-ṭarabiizaat jamb haada l-jadur.	الكنبه والطريقات جنب هادا الجدر.
B. I was going to put them by the door.	kunt H-aHuṭṭahum jamb al-baab.	كنت حاطهم جنب الباب.
idea	fikra	فكرة
I prefer	afaḍḍil	افضل
A. That's a good idea, but I prefer that they be here.	haadi fikra ṭayyiba, laakin afaḍḍil innahum yikuunu hina.	هادي فكرة طيبة لكن افضل انهم يكونوا هنا.
mood, opinion	keef	كيف
box, trunk	šanduug	صندوق
ma'am ('my lady')	sitti	ستي
B. As you (f) wish, ma'am. And this box?	9ala keefik ya sitti. wu haada š-šanduug?	على كيفك يا ستي. وهادا الصندوق؟
dog	kalb	كلب
garden	Hooš*	حوش
A. That's the dog's box. Back in the garden.	haada šanduug al-kalb. wara fil-Hooš.	هادا صندوق الكلب. ورا في الحوش.

*This word alternates with /jineena/.

Structure Sentences

1. She was going to ask him.	kaanat Ha-tis'alu.	كانت حنساله .
2. That's a bad idea.	haadi fikra baṭṭaala.	هادي فكرة بطالة .
3. That's quite a good ('not bad') idea.	haadi fikra mahi baṭṭaala.	هادي فكرة مهي بطالة .
4. We prefer to leave after the evening [prayer].	nifaḍḍil nimsi ba9d al-9iṣa.	نفضل نمشي بعد العشاء

5. This is the cat's food. haada akl al-bissa. عادا اكل البسة.
 6. I have an idea. 9indi fikra. عندي فكرة.

Grammatical Notes

1. To express 'was going to', 'was planning to', use the perfect of /kaan/ with a future verb:

kunt H-aruuH. I was going to go.
 kaanat Ha-tis'alu. She was going to ask him.

2. /faḍḍal, yifaḍḍil/ may be used as a helping verb with other verbs (cf. Structure Sentence 4).

3. This is a summary of all the verb tenses introduced:

Summary of Tenses

(Lesson 4)	Perfect	Suffixes:	-Ø -at -u -t -ti -tu -t -na
(Lesson 5)	Imperfect	Prefixes:	y- t- y- -u t- t- -i t- -u a- n-
(Lesson 14)	Future	Use /Ha-/ or /raH-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 15)	Affirmative Command	Use second-person imperfect form, minus the /t-/ prefix.	
(Lesson 22)	Habitual	Use imperfect, or /b-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 22)	Present Perfect	Use a form of /giid-/, or the active participle.	
(Lesson 25)	Present Progressive (continuous)	Use /b-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 25)	Past Progressive	Use /kaan/ + imperfect, or /kaan/ + /b-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 27)	Negative Command	Use /laa/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 36)	Ongoing Action	Use /9ammaal/ + imperfect.	

(Lesson 41) Past Perfect Use /kaan/ + perfect.
Future Perfect Use/Ha-yikuun/ + perfect.

(Lesson 42) "Was Going to" Use /kaan/ + future.
(intention)

Vocabulary Notes

kanaba, -aat
sariir, surur
sujjaada, sajaajiid
šubbaak, šabaabiik
jadur, judraan
šanduug, šanaadiig
tallaaja, -aat
sitaara, sataayir

fikra, afkaar
kalb, -a, kilaab
bissa, bisas

baṭṭaal, -a, -iin
faḍḍal, yifaḍḍil

sofa
bed
carpet, rug
window
wall
box, trunk
refrigerator
curtain, drapery

idea
dog
cat

bad
prefer

كنبه -ات
سرير
سجادة
شباك
جدر جدران
صندوق صناديق
ثلاجة -ات
ستارة ستائر

فكرة افكار
كلب كلاب
بسة بسس

بطلال -ين
فضل يفضل

Drills

1. Put the chair next to
the window.

Huṭṭ al-kursi jamb aš-šubbaak.

حط الكرسي جنب
الشباك

Substitute:

the sofa
the table
next to the wall
the bed
the rug
next to the door
the refrigerator
next to the window
the chair

2. I was going to put them
by the door.

kunt H-aHuṭṭahum jamb al-baab.

كنت حاضهم
جنب الباب

Substitute:

[over] there
to bring them
to bring it (m)
she was
we were
in the car
take it (f)
put it (f)
I was
by the door

3. She was going to ask
him.

kaanat Ha-tis'alu.

كانت حنأله

Substitute:

asked
will ask
had asked
will have asked
wanted to ask
must ask
was going to ask

4. That's a good idea.

haadi fikra ṭayyiba.

هاري فكرة طيبة.

Substitute:

bad
wrong
not bad
accurate
plan
project
good
bad
situation
difficult
good
idea

5. I prefer that they
be here.

afaḍḍil innahum yikuuru hina.

افضل انهم
يكونوا هنا.

Substitute:

he
we
they
preferred
you (m)
it (m)
someplace else (/fi makaan taani/)
I
in another room
in the kitchen
here

6. That's the dog's box.

haada ṣanduug al-kalb.

هاري صندوق الكلب.

Substitute:

food
the cat's
room
bed
box
the dog's

Situations

- 1.
- A. I prefer a large house because I have three children, a dog, and a cat.
- B. You brought a dog and cat with you to the Kingdom?
- A. Of course. They're very important. They have been with us for a long time.
- B. If I had a dog or a cat, I would have left it in America.

- 2.
- A. Clean (f) the walls and then the refrigerator.
 - B. And the rug?
 - A. No, the rug later. The kitchen is more important now.
 - B. When are the people coming?
 - A. They're coming tonight. Don't forget to clean the windows in the living room.
 - B. As you (f) wish.
- 3.
- A. I want to buy something sweet for dinner.
 - B. Baklawa is good--foreigners like it.
 - A. Good idea. But I prefer ice cream (/ays kriim/).
 - B. Shall I buy it now?*
 - A. Yes, buy about a kilo.
 - B. OK, I have enough change.

*When you hear a foreign word, if it ends in /a-/, treat it as feminine; if not, as masculine. In this case, /ays kriim/ would be masculine.

Culture Notes

1. Saudis may own pets but most do not. They are often surprised by the affection lavished upon pets by foreigners. When Saudis visit an American's home, they usually do not appreciate having pets around. It is not considered appropriate for a dog to live inside the house.

LESSON 43

Dialogue

(At the post office)

I send	arsil	ارسل
air (adjective)	jawwi	جوي
registered	musajjal	مسجل
A. I want to mail ('send') a letter to America, airmail and registered.	abgha arsil jawaab li-amriika, bariid jawwi wu musajjal.	ابغى ارسل جواب الأمريكا، بريد جوي ومسجل
stamps	ṭawaabi9	طابع
B. Its weight is heavy. Four riyals for stamps.	waznu tagiil. arba9a riyaal liṭ-ṭawaabi9.	وزنه ثقيل. أربعة ريال للطابع
I translate	atarjim	انترجم
A. I want to translate this address.	abgha atarjim haada l-9inwaan.	ابغى انترجم هادا المنزل
I help (with)	asaa9id (fi)	اساعد (في)
translation	tarjama	ترجمة
B. I'll help you with the translation.	ana asaa9idak fit-tarjama.	انا اساعدك في الترجمة
I just	duubi	دوبي
I sent	arsalt	ارسلت
package	ṭard	طرد
A. I just sent a package. When will it arrive?	ana duubi arsalt ṭard. mita yiwṣal?	انا دوبي ارسلت طرد. متى يوصل؟
probability	iḥtimaal	احتمال
B. Probably ('the probabi- lity') in two weeks.	iḥtimaal ba9d usbuu9een.	احتمال بعد اسبوعين

Structure Sentences

1. I want to send a letter regular mail.	abgha arsil jawaab bariid 9aadi.	ابغى ارسل جواب بريد عادي
2. Put the stamp on the envelope.	Huṭṭ aṭ-ṭaaba9 9ala ṭ-ṭarf.	حط الطابع على الطرف
3. This is an official letter.	haada jawaab rasmi.	هادا جواب رسمي
4. This is diplomatic mail.	haada bariid diblumaasi.	هادا بريد دبلوماسي

5. I need an interpreter. ana miHtaaĵ li-mutarĵim. أنا محتاج مترجم
 6. He just arrived. huwwa duubu waṣal. هو دويده وصل

Grammatical Notes

1. The word /duub-/ is used before another verb to mean 'just', in the sense of recently completing an action. It is conjugated for persons:

duubu	he just	دويده
duubaha	she just	دويدها
duubahum	they just	دويدهم
duubak	you (m) just	دويذك
duubik	you (f) just	دويذك
duubakum	you (p) just	دويذكُم
duubi	I just	دويبي
duubana	we just	دويبنّا
duubi arsalt ṭard.	I just sent a package.	
duubu waṣal.	He just arrived.	

An alternative word in common use for 'just' is /taww-/. It is also used with pronoun endings: /tawwu/, /tawwaha/, /tawwi/, etc.

Vocabulary Notes

ṭaaba9, ṭawaabi9	stamp	طابع
ṭard, ṭuruud	package	حزمة
ṣarf, ṣuruuf	envelope	خريف
mutarĵim, -a, -iin	interpreter	مترجم -ين
tarĵam, yitarĵim	interpret	ترجم
saa9ad, yisaa9id (fi)	help	يساعد (في)
arsal, yirsil	send	ارسل يرسل

Drills

1. I want to mail a letter to America, abgha arsil jawaab li-amriika, ابغى ارسل جواب
 letter to America, bariid jawwi. أمريكا بريد جوي
 airmail.

Substitute:

registered
 regular mail
 quickly
 in this envelope
 diplomatic mail
 official mail
 at government expense

2. I want to translate this address. abgha atarĵim haada l-9inwaan. ابغى اترجم هادا العنوان

Substitute:

this letter
 this note
 she
 this book

the lesson
he
this address
his name

3. I'll help you with the translation. ana asaa9idak fi t-tarjama.

انا اساعدك في الترجمة.

Substitute:

the work
the writing
the lesson
the address
the food
the project
the translation

4. I just sent a package. ana duubi arsalt tard.

انا دوبي ارسلت طرد.

Substitute:

he
you (m)
we
you (p)
she
they
I

5. He just arrived. huwwa duubu wasal.

هو دوبي وصل.

Substitute:

she
went
wrote to him
they
spent the money
we
I
requested a taxi
she
he
arrived

Situations

1.
 - A. Where is my interpreter?
 - B. He just went home.
 - A. Unbelievable! I told him that I need him tonight.
 - B. Never mind, I'll help you with the interpreting.
2.
 - A. Did you write to the director?
 - B. Yes, I sent the letter this morning from the post office. Airmail and registered.
 - A. I hope it arrives quickly.
 - B. I asked the employee and he said there is a probability that it will be on a plane today.

3.
A. Let's translate this together.
B. OK, if I can find my pen and notebook.
A. On the table beside the green chair.
B. Can you bring them for me?
A. The letter concerns (/9an/) our plan for the new building.
B. I'm sure it's important.

LESSON 44

Dialogue

so you (m), for you (m)	bak	بَك
A. What's wrong with you?	eeš bak?	ايشر بك؟
head	raas	راس
it (f) hurts	tuja9	توجع
B. I'm a little "tired". My head hurts now.	ana ta9baan šwayya. raasi tuja9ni.	انا تعبان شوية . راسي توجعني .
A. I hope you're better soon.	salaamatak.	سلامتك .
B. Thank you. I wanted to go to the university but I won't be able to.	aššaah yisallimak. kunt abgha aruuH al-jaam9a laakin ma H-agdar.	الله يسلمك . كنت ايفس اروح الجامعة لكن ما حاذر .
you (m) rest	tistariiH	تستريح
A. Never mind. You (m) have to rest.	ma9aleeš. laazim tistariiH.	معلش . لازم تستريح .
B. Can you do me a favor?	mumkin ti9milli xidma?	مكن تعملي خدمة؟
gladly	ibšer	ايشر
A. Gladly, what? ('say'),	ibšer. guul.	ايشر . قول .
medicine	dawa	دوا
pharmacy	šaydaliyya	صيدلية
B. Try me this medicine at the pharmacy.	ištiriili haada d-dawa min aš-šaydaliyya.	اشتريلي هادا الدوا من الصيدلية .

Structure Sentences

1. What's wrong with you (f)?	eeš bik?	ايشر بك؟
2. My head hurts (me).	šahri yuja9ni.	ظهري يوجعني .
3. My forehead hurts.	baṭni tuja9ni.	بطني توجعني .
4. He should have come before this; he had to come before this.	kaan laazim yiji gabl kida.	كان لازم يجي قبل
5. I arrived yesterday.	astaraHt ams.	استرحت امس .
6. Other than that, we were happy.	gheer kida, kunna mabsuuṭiin.	غير كده كنا مبسوطين .

Grammatical Notes

1. /eeš bak?/ is used to mean 'What's [wrong] with you?' and is conjugated:

eeš bak?	What's wrong with you (m)?
eeš bik?	What's wrong with you (f)?
eeš bakum?	What's wrong with you (p)?
eeš buh?	What's wrong with him?
eeš baha?	What's wrong with her?
eeš bahum?	What's wrong with them?

A variation of this is /eeš fiik/, /eeš fiiki/, etc.

2. Parts of the body may be grammatically masculine or feminine. Generally, two-member parts are feminine, and one-member parts are masculine (although this varies):

raas (m. or f.)	head
ḡahr (m)	back
baṭn (f)	stomach
iid, yadeen* (f)	hand
diraa9, diraa9een (f)	arm
rijl, rujuul (f)	foot
saag, saageen (f)	leg
9een, 9uyuun (f)	eye



*Note that some "plural" forms are in fact dual. Also note that /yadeen/ alternates with /iideen/, introduced in Lesson 37.

yadeenu	his hands
yadeenaha	her hands
yadeenahum	their hands
yadeenak	your (m) hands
yadeenik	your (f) hands
yadeenakum	your (p) hands
yadeeni	my hands
yadeena	our hands
rujuulu	his feet
rujuulaha	her feet
rujuuli	my feet
(etc.)	
9uyuunu	his eyes
9uyuunaha	her eyes
9uyuuni	my eyes
(etc.)	

3. /kaan/ in the perfect tense can be combined with some verbs in the imperfect tense. With verbs, it is conjugated for person:

kunt abgha aruuH.	I wanted to go.
kaanat tibgha tiji.	She wanted to come.

With modal words like /laazim/ and /mumkin/, /kaan/ may or may not be conjugated (it varies with different speakers). (See also Lesson 29).

kaan laazim aji.	I had to come; I should have come.
kunt laazim aji.	I had to come; I should have come.
kaan mumkin aji.	I was able to come.
kunt mumkin aji.	I was able to come.

4. /ibser/, 'gladly', 'certainly', is used when responding to a request for a favor.

5. /kida/, 'like that', may be used idiomatically:

gabl kida	before that
ba9d kida	after that
ma9a kida	in spite of that, nevertheless
gheer kida	other than that
zayy kida	like that

قبل كده
بعد كده
مع كده
غير كده
زي كده

Vocabulary Notes

waja9, yuja9
astaraaH, yistariiH

hurt
rest

وجع
استراح يستريح

dawa, adwiya*

medicine

دوا ادوية

*This word is masculine.

Drills

1. What's wrong with
you (m)?

ees bak?

ايش بك؟

Substitute:

you (f)
them
her
you (p)
him
you (m)

2. My head hurts (me).

raasi tuja9ni.

راسي توجعني

Substitute:

my back
my leg
my foot
my stomach
my arm
my eyes
my hand
my head

3. I wanted to go to the
university.

kunt abgha aruuH al-jaam9a. كنت ابغى اروح الجامعة

Substitute:

I had to go
I had to return

to the airport
I could have returned ('it was possible that I return')
he could have returned
he could have visited
he wanted to visit
he wanted to see
the university
I wanted to see
I wanted to go

4. He should have come before this. kaan laazim yiji gabl kida.

كان لازم يجي قبل

Substitute:

he could have come
he could have left
after that
he wanted to leave
I
she
she had to leave
she had to finish
before that
we
he
he had to come

5. Other than that, we were gheer kida, kunna mabsuutiin.
happy.

غير كده كنا
مبسوطين

Substitute:

before that
after that
nevertheless
other than that

Situations

1.

A. Hello. What's wrong with you (m)?
B. I don't know. I'm a little tired.
A. Maybe you need a rest.
B. Yes, I'll try. My back hurts.
A. "I hope you're better soon."
B. "Thanks."
2.

A. I'm sorry, I'm wrong.
B. Never mind. It's not important.
A. I should have asked the boss first.
B. Next time.
A. Nevertheless, nobody is angry.
3.

A. How are you today?
B. My head still hurts. Other than that, I'm much better.
A. Thank God. All your friends send their greetings.
B. "Thanks." Can you do me a favor?
A. Gladly.
B. Give me the medicine which I left on the table.

LESSON 45

Dialogue

during	xilaal	خلال
vacation	9uṭla	عطلة
Eid (Moslem holiday)	9iid	عيد
A. What did you (p) do during the Eid vacation?	eeṣ sawweetu xilaal 9uṭlat al-9iid?	ايڤي سويتوا خلال عطلة العيد؟
guests	ḡuyuuf	ضيوف
Europe	urubba	اروبا
B. We had guests from Europe.	kaan 9indana ḡuyuuf min urubba.	كان عندنا ضيوف من اوروبا.
party	Hafla	حفلة
A. Can you (p) honor us at a party tomorrow night?	mumkin tiṣarrifuuna fi Hafla bukra fil-leel?	ممکن تشرفونا في حفلة بكرة في الليل؟
B. I think so.	aḡunn kida.	اظن كده.
well ('in goodness')	b-xeer	بخير
A. Have a good holiday. ('May you (p) be well every year')	kull 9aam w intu b-xeer.	كل عام وانتو بخير.
B. You too. ('And you (p) are of the same group')	w intu min ahlu.	وانتو من اهله.

Structure Sentences

1. Christmas vacation begins next week.	9uṭlat 9iid al-miilaad tibda' al-usbuu9 al-jayy.	عطلة عيد الميلاد تبدأ الاسبوع الجي.
2. Our family will travel on National Day.	9eelatna Ha-tisaafir fil-9iid al-waṭani.	عيلتنا حتسافر في العيد الوطني.
3. We have guests from Africa.	9indana ḡuyuuf min afriqya.	عندنا ضيوف من افريقيا.
4. Can you (m) honor us at a reception ('reception party')?	mumkin tiṣarrifna fi Haflat istigbaal?	ممکن تشرفنا في حفلة استقبال؟
5. I want to invite you to a party.	abgha a9zimak 9ala Hafla.	ايڤي اعزمتك على حفلة.
6. I have a meeting tonight.	9indi ijtimaat al-leela.	عندي اجتماع الليلة.

Grammatical Notes

1. Some holidays are:

(Moslem)	al-9iid al-kabiir (9iid al-aqHa)	Big Eid (Feast of Sacrifice)	العید الكبير (عيد الأضحى)
	al-9iid aṣ-ṣaghiir (9iid al-fiṭir)	Little Eid (Feast of Breaking the Fast)	العید الصغير (عيد الفطر)
	mawlid an-nabi	The Prophet's Birthday	مولد النبي
(Christian and American)	9iid al-miilaad	Christmas	عيد الميلاد
	9iid al-giyaama	Easter	عيد القيامة
	9iid aṣ-ṣukr	Thanksgiving	عيد الشكر
	9iid al-istiqlaal	Independence Day	عيد الاستقلال
(Other)	al-9iid al-waṭani	National Day	العید الوطني

2. The continents are:

urubba	Europe	اروپا
aasya	Asia	آسيا
afriqya	Africa	أفريقيا
amriika ṣ-samaaliyya	North America	أمريكا الشمالية
amriika l-januubiyya	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية

3. On the occasion of any annual holiday or commemoration (religious, national, one's birthday), the following expression is used:

kull 9aam w intu b-xeer. May you (p) be well every year.
 (inta) (you (m))
 (inti) (you (f))

The response is:

w intu min ahlu. And you (p) are of the same group.
 (inta) (you (m))
 (inti) (you (f))

Vocabulary Notes

9uṭla, 9uṭal	vacation	عطلة عطل
9iid, a9yaad	holiday, Eid	عيد اعياد
ḡeef, ḡuyuuf	guest	ضيف ضيوف
Hafla, Hafalaat	party	حفلة -ات
istigbaal, -aat	reception	استقبال -ات
ijtimaa9, -aat	meeting	اجتماع -ات
bada', yibda'	begin	بدأ يبدأ
9azam, yi9zim (9ala)	invite	عزم يعزم (على)

Drills

1. What did you (p) do during the Eid vacation? eeṣ sawweetu xilaal 9uṭlat al-9iid? ايش سويتوا خلال عطلة العيد؟

Substitute:

during Christmas vacation
during the summer vacation
on National Day
on Independence Day
on your (m) birthday
on the Prophet's birthday
on Easter
on Thanksgiving
during the Eid vacation

2. We had guests from Europe. kaan 9indana quyuuf min urubba.

كان عندنا ضيوف من
أوروبا.

Substitute:

Africa
North America
Asia
South America
Europe

3. (a man to a man)
kull 9aam w inta b-xeer. → w inta min ahlu. كل عام وانت بخير. ← وانت من اهله.

Repeat the exchange, between the following groups of persons:

(a man to a woman)
(a man to a group)
(a woman to a group)
(a woman to a woman)
(a group to a woman)
(a group to a man)
(a man to a man)

4. Christmas vacation begins next week. 9uɣlat 9iid al-miilaad tibda' al-usbuu9 al-jayy. عطلة عيد الميلاد تبدأ الأسبوع الجي.

Substitute:

(the) summer vacation
my work
the university
we
they
(the) school
the project
Thanksgiving vacation

5. I have a meeting tonight. 9indi ijtimaa9 al-leela.

عندي اجتماع الليلة.

Substitute:

a party
a reception
the ambassador's reception
an official party
an official meeting
a diplomatic reception
three parties
a meeting

6. I want to invite you (m) abqha a9zimak 9ala Hafila. ابغى اعزماك على حفلة.
to a party.

Substitute:

we want
she wants
to invite them
to invite him
he wants
to invite me
to invite us
they want
to invite you (f)
to invite you (m)
I want

Situations

1.
 - A. Can you (p) honor us at a reception?
 - B. Gladly. Where?
 - A. At our house, the day after tomorrow about eight o'clock.
 - B. May I bring guests with me?
 - A. Of course, welcome.
 - B. I'll tell them.
 - A. Goodby.
 - B. Goodby.
2.
 - A. Today is my birthday.
 - B. "Happy Birthday". (use annual greeting)
 - A. "Thank you".
 - B. How old are you?
 - A. 30. My wife invites you to a party tonight.
 - B. What time does it start?
 - A. After dinner.
3.
 - A. Where will you go during your vacation?
 - B. I and my family are traveling ('will travel') to Africa.
 - A. I hope you like Africa.
 - B. We have many friends who invited us.
 - A. People from the State Department?
 - B. Yes, all of them.

LESSON 46

Dialogue

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| democracy, democratic | dimuqraaṭiyya | ديموقراطية |
| two parties (political) | Hizbeen | حزبين |
| republican | jumhuuri | جمهوري |
| A. The American government is a democracy. We have two political parties, the Democratic and the Republican. | Hukuumat amriika dimuqraaṭiyya. 9indana Hizbeen, ad-dimuqraaṭi w al-jumhuuri. | حكومة امريكا ديموقراطية. عندنا حزبين، الديمقراطي والجمهوري. |
| monarchy | malakiyya | ملكية |
| similarly | kazaalik | كذلك |
| B. Here in Saudi Arabia, the government is a monarchy. It's the same ('similarly') in Jordan. | hina fis-su9uudiyya, al-Hukuuma malakiyya. kazaalik fil-urdun. | هنا في السعودية الحكومة ملكية. كذلك الاردن. |
| republic | jumhuuriyya | جمهورية |
| A. But Egypt is a republic. | laakin maṣur jumhuuriyya. | لاكن مصر جمهورية. |
| system | niṣaam | نظام |
| socialist | iṣṭiraaki | اشتراكي |
| B. Yes, it has ('in it') a socialist system. | iiwa, fiiha niṣaam iṣṭiraaki. | ايوه، فيها نظام اشتراكي. |
| politics | as-siyaasa | السياسة |
| A. Do you like to talk about politics? | tiHubb titkallam 9an as-siyaasa? | تحب تتكلم عن السياسة؟ |
| newspapers | jaraayid | جرايد |
| magazines | majallaat | مجلات |
| international ('wordly') | 9aalami | عالمي |
| B. Yes, very much. I read the international newspapers and magazines everyday. | illa, katiir. agra l-jaraayid wal-majallaat al-9aalamiyya kull yoom. | الا كثير. اقرا الجرايد والمجلات العالمية كل يوم. |

Structure Sentences

- | | | |
|--|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. Communism is important in Russia. | aṣ-ṣuyuu9iyya muhimma fi ruusya. | الشيوعية مهمة في روسيا. |
| 2. The Arab governments are against Zionism. | al-Hukuumaat al-9arabiyya ḡidd aṣ-ṣahyuuniyya. | الحكومات العربية ضد الصهيونية. |

- | | | |
|--|---|-------------------------------|
| 3. He is a Zionist from Israel. | huwwa \$ahyuuni min isra'iil. | هو صهيوني من إسرائيل. |
| 4. My country is a republic. | baladi jumhuuriyya. | بلدي جمهورية. |
| 5. This article is from a Saudi newspaper. | haadi l-magaala min jariida su9uudiyya. | هادي المقالة من جريدة سعودية. |
| 6. Do you have the new "Time" magazine? | 9indak majallat "Time" al-jadiida? | عندك مجلة تايم الجديدة؟ |

Grammatical Notes

1. Certain types of "abstract" nouns are formed with the suffix /-iyya/ added to a word stem. Some common ones relating to politics are:

dimuqraaṭiyya	democracy	ديموقراطية
malakiyya	monarchy	ملكية
iṣṭiraakiyya	socialism	اشتراكية
\$uyuu9iyya	communism	شيوعية
qawmiyya	nationalism	قومية
jumhuuriyya	republic	جمهورية
\$ahyuuniyya	Zionism	صهيونية

The adjective derived from this type of noun has the endings /-i/, (/ -iyya/, /-yiin/):

dimuqraaṭi	democratic
jumhuuri	republican
iṣṭiraaki	socialist
siyaasi	political
(etc.)	

2. Abstract nouns (of any type) are almost always used with the definite article /al-/ in Arabic, but this is not translated into English:

tiHubb titkallam 9an as-siyaasa?	Do you like to talk about politics?
aṣ-\$uyuu9iyya muhimma fi-ruusya.	Communism is important in Russia.
al-Hukuumaat al-9arabiyya qidd aṣ-\$ahyuuniyya.	The Arab governments are against Zionism.

Statements which generalize about an idea usually have the definite article /al-/ with the noun, which is not the case in English.

In past lessons:

mamnuu9 al-xuruuj.	Exiting is forbidden.
..li'ann aṣ-\$eef jayy	..because summer is coming
al-iijaar ghaali hina.	Rent is expensive here.
al-fuluus muhimma.	Money is important.
atkallamna 9an at-ta9liim waṣ-\$iHHa.	We discussed education and health.
wu fi ta9liim al-banaat?	And in girls' education?

Other examples:

al-kiimya \$a9ba.	Chemistry is difficult.
al-banziin raxii\$.	Gasoline is cheap.
aş-şiHHa muhimma.	Health is important.
al-akl as-su9uudi	Saudi food is delicious.
ti9im.	

Vocabulary Notes

Hizb, aHzaab	(political) party	حزب احزاب
nižaam, nužum	system	نظام نظم
jariida, jaraayid	newspaper	جريدة جراید
majalla, -aat	magazine	مجلة -ات
siyaasa, -aat	policy; politics	سياسة -ات
balad, bilaad (buldaan)*	country	بلد بلاد (بلدان)

*/balad/ or /bilaad/ may mean 'country'. At the same time, /bilaad/ and /buldaan/ may be the plural, 'countries'.

dimuqraaṭi, -yiin	democratic	ديموقراطي -بين
jumhuuri, -yiin	republican	جمهوري -بين
siyaasi, -yiin	political	سياسي -بين
malaki, -yiin	monarchist	ملكي -بين
ištiraaki, -yiin	socialist	اشتراكي -بين
šuyuu9i, -iin	communist	شيوعي -بين
9aalami, -yiin	international	عالمي -بين
šahyuuni, -yiin	Zionist	صهيوني -بين
isra'iili, -yiin	Israeli	اسرائيلي -بين

Drills

1. The American government is a democracy.	al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya <u>dimuqraaṭiyya.</u>	الحكومة الامريكية ديموقراطية
--	---	---------------------------------

Substitute:

German
French
Italian
my
monarchy
Saudi
English
Jordanian
the government of my country
socialist
Egyptian
Sudanese
this government
communist
Russian

2. Egypt has a socialist system.	<u>mašur fiiha nižaam ištiraaki.</u>
----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

مصر فيها نظام
اشتراكي

Substitute:

the United States (democratic)
Russia (communist)
Saudi Arabia (monarchist)
Libya (nationalist)
Israel (Zionist)

Lebanon (democratic)
Japan (democratic)
Egypt (socialist)

3. Do you like to talk
about politics?

tiHubb titkallam 9an
as-siyaasa?

نحب نتكلم عن السياسة؟

Substitute:

she
about the government
about Zionism
they
about their country
about socialism and communism
he
about political parties
about the Democratic party
about the Republican party
about Israel's politics
you (f)
about the newspapers
about Arab politics
about political systems

4. I read the international
newspapers.

agra al-jaraayid al-
9aalamiiyya.

اقرا الجرايد العالمية.

Substitute:

American
magazines
international
German
Arab
newspapers
Saudi

5. The Arab governments are
against Zionism.

al-Hukuumaat al-9arabiiyya
qidd as-9ahyuuniyya.

الحكومات العربية
ضد الصهيونية.

Substitute:

Israel
this policy
this idea
I
all of us
this plan
these plans
these policies
Russia's policy
your (p) policy

6. He is a Zionist from
Israel.

huwwa 9ahyuuni min
isra'ii.

هو صهيوني من اسرائيل.

Substitute:

Europe
communist
socialist

Italy
America
Democrat
Republican

Situations

1.
A. What is the political system in the Arab countries?
B. There are many systems--monarchist socialist, and democratic.
A. And communist?
B. No, there is no communism.
2.
A. Have you seen today's paper?
B. Yes, I read the article about Zionism and Arab nationalism.
A. I know the man who wrote it.
B. I think he writes for a Saudi newspaper and an international newspaper as well (/kazaalik/), right?
A. Yes, and he writes the best political articles.
3.
A. There is a reception at the embassy tonight. Are you going?
B. Maybe, I'm not sure. I have guests.
A. Have them come with you.
B. I'll try. Why is there a party?
A. It's National Day.
B. Oh, yes, I forgot.

LESSON 47

Dialogue

Ramadan	ramaḍaan	رمضان
A. Tomorrow Ramadan begins.	bukra yibda' šahar ramaḍaan.	بكرة يبدأ شهر رمضان
they fast	yiṣuumu	يصوموا
all ('the length of')	ṭuul	طول
even	Hatta	حتى
B. Yes, all the Moslems will fast all month. They don't eat and don't drink and don't even smoke cigarettes.	iiwa, kull al-muslimiin Ha-yiṣuumu ṭuul aš-šahar. ma yaaklu wala yišrabu wu Hatta ma yišrabu sajaayir.	ايوه، كل المسلمين جميعهم طول الشهر. ما ياكلوا ولا يشربوا وحتى ما يشربوا سجائر.
pillars, tenets	arkaan	اركان
religion	diin	دين
Islamic	islaami	اسلامي
A. I know that there are five "pillars" in the Islamic religion.	a9rif innu fii xamsa arkaan fid-diin al-islaami.	اعرف انه فيه خمسة اركان في الدين الاسلامي
declaration of faith	aš-šihāda	الشهادة
prayer	aš-šalaa	الصلاة
alms	az-zakaa	الزكاة
fasting	aš-šoom	الصوم
pilgrimage (to Mecca)	al-Hajj	الحج
B. Yes, the five pillars are: the declaration of faith prayer, almsgiving, fasting, and the pilgrimage.	al-arkaan al-xamsa humma: aš-šihāda, aš-šalaa, az-zakaa, aš-šoom, wal-Hajj.	الاركان الخمسة هم: الشهادة، الصلاة، الزكاة، الصوم، والحج.

Structure Sentences

- I have to pray the sunset laazim ašalli l-maghrib.* [prayer]. لازم اصلي المغرب
- Alms are two and one-half per cent. az-zakaa itneen wu nuṣṣ fil-miyya. الزكات اثنين ونص في المية
- The declaration of faith is: [There is] no god but God and Muhammad is the Messenger of God. aš-šihāda hiyya: laa ilaaha illa llaah wu muḥammad rasuul al-laah. الشهادة هي: لا اله الا الله ومحمد رسول الله

*the full expressions would be /šalaat al-maghrib/, 'the evening prayer'.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 4. I didn't even see my family. | Hatta ma šuft ahli. | حتى ما شفت اهلي. |
| 5. Even he knows. | Hatta huwwa yi9rif. | حتى هو يعرف |

Grammatical Notes

1. The Islamic months are:

muHarram
šafar
rabii9 al-awwal
rabii9 at-taani
jumaad al-awwal
jumaad at-taani
rajab
ša9baan
ramaḡaan
šawwaal
zu l-gi9da
zu l-Hijja

محرم
صفر
ربيع الاول
ربيع الثاني
جماد الاول
جماد الثاني
رجب
شعبان
رمضان
شوال
ذو القعدة
ذو الحجة

They are calculated according to a lunar system, which means that the Islamic year is eleven days shorter than the Western year. The calendar begins with the year 1 corresponding to 622 A.D., the date on which the Prophet Muhammad emigrated from Mecca to Medina. This emigration is called /al-Hijra/ in Arabic, and thus an Islamic date is referred to as /Hijri/, often abbreviated in English as A.H., while a date in the Western calendar is called /miilaadi/ (referring to the birth of Jesus). Each lunar month begins with the new moon.

ana mawluud 9aam 1367 Hijri fi šahar ša9baan.
I was born in 1367 A.H. in the month of Shaban.

ana mawluud 9aam 1949 miilaadi fi šahar maaris.
I was born in 1949 A.D. in the month of March.

2. Note the use of /tuul an-nahaar/, 'all day long' (literally, 'the length of the daytime'), as opposed to /kull yoom/, 'every day'. /tuul/ may be used with other time words:

tuul aš-šahar	all month
tuul as-sana	all year
tuul al-usbuu9	all week

3. /širib/, 'to drink', is used idiomatically to mean 'to smoke':

ma yišrabu sajaayir. They don't smoke cigarettes.

The verb /daxxan, yidaxxin/ is also commonly used to mean 'smoke'; its verbal noun is /tadxiin/:

ma adaxxin.	I don't smoke.
ma ašrab sajaayir.	I don't smoke.
mamnuu9 at-tadxiin.	No smoking.

4. /Hatta/ is used with an affirmative verb to mean 'even', and with a negative verb to mean 'not even':

Hatta huwwa yi9rif.	Even he knows.
Hatta dafa9t al-fuluus.	I even paid the money.

Hatta ma yiṣrabu sajaayir.	They don't even smoke cigarettes.
Hatta ma šuft ahli.	I didn't even see my family.
Hatta ma Ha-niHaawil.	We're not even going to try.

5. Major religions are:

al-islam	Islam	الإسلام
al-masiiHiyya	Christianity	المسيحية
al-yahuudiyya	Judaism	اليهودية
al-buudiyya	Buddhism	البوذية
al-hinduusiyya	Hinduism	الهندوسية

A follower of each religion is referred to as:

muslim, -a, -iin	Moslem	مسلم -ين
masiiHi, -iyya, -yiin	Christian	مسيحي -يين
yahuudi, -iyya, -yiin*	Jew	يهودي -يين (يهود)
buudi, -iyya, -yiin	Buddhist	بودي -يين
hinduusi, -iyya, -yiin	Hindu	هندوسي -يين

*/yahuud/ is another plural; it is more classical.

A follower of a religion other than the first three, or an atheist or a pagan, may be referred to as /kaafir/ (-a, -iin), 'unbeliever'.

Vocabulary Notes

diin, adyaan	religion	دين اديان
rukṇ, arkaan	pillar, support	ركن اركان
ṣaam, yiṣuum (ṣumt)	fast	صام يصوم (صمت)
ṣalla, yiṣalli (ṣalleet)	pray	صلى يصلي (صلبت)
daxxan, yidaxxin	smoke	دخن يدخن

Drills

1. They don't even smoke cigarettes. Hatta ma yiṣrabu sajaayir. حتى لا يشربوا سجائر.

Substitute:

ṣaahi
moyya
sajaayir
yidaxxin
yiṣtari
akl
yaakul
ṣayy

2. Even he knows.

Hatta huwwa yiṣrif.

حتى هو يعرف

Substitute:

I
they
went
she
came with us

doesn't know
you (f)
must return
you (p)
were going to forget
I
he
knows

3. I have to pray the
sunset [prayer].

laazim aṣalli l-maghrib.
(or: /ṣalaat al-maghrib/)

لازم أصلي المغرب

Substitute:

he
we
the evening prayer
the dawn prayer
they
the Moslems
all year
the afternoon prayer
the noon prayer
the people
the merchants
I
the Friday prayer
the sunset prayer

4. Tomorrow Ramadan
begins.

bukra yibda' ṣaḥar
ramaḍaan.

بكرة يبدأ شهر رمضان

Substitute:

muḥarram
ṣafar
rabii9 al-awwal
rabii9 at-taani
jumaad al-awwal
jumaad at-taani
rajab
ṣa9baan
ramaḍaan
ṣawwaal
zu l-gi9d
zu l-Hijja

محرم
صفر
ربيع الأول
ربيع الثاني
جماد الأول
جماد الثاني
رجب
شعبان
رمضان
شوال
ذو القعدة
ذو الحجة

5. Complete the sentence:

[One] of the five pillars in the Islamic religion [is]:

min al-arkaan al-xamsa fid-diin al-islaami:

من الأركان الخمسة في الدين
الإسلامي:

the declaration of faith
prayer
alms [giving]
fasting
pilgrimage

Situations

1.
 - A. What are you studying now in your history book?
 - B. We're studying religions of the world.
 - A. You mean (/ya9ni/) Islam and Christianity?
 - B. Yes, and Judaism, Buddhism, and Hinduism as well (/kazaalik/).
 - A. Do you like the book?
 - B. Very much. It's the best book I've read about history.
2.
 - A. Why are the shops closed?
 - B. For the evening prayer. They will open again in a little while.
 - A. Shall we wait here?
 - B. Let's stand here ten minutes because I haven't even bought the things
[which] I want.
 - A. Do the shops close like this (/kida/) every day?
 - B. Yes, and of course they are closed all day on Friday.

LESSON 48

Dialogue

built	mabni	مبنى
exporting	taşdiir	تصدير
oil	naft	نفت
A. The economy of the Kingdom is built on the exporting of oil.	iqtisaad al-mamlaka mabni 9ala taşdiir an-naft.	اقتصاد المملكة مبنى على تصدير النفط.
we export	nişaddir	نصدر
we import	nistawrid	نستورد
majority	mu9zam	معظم
needs, necessities	Haajaat	حاجات
B. Yes, we export oil and important most of our needs from abroad.	iiwa, nişaddir al-baṭrool wu nistawrid mu9zam Haajaatana min barra.	ايوه، نصدر البترول ونستورد معظم حاجاتنا من برا.
for example	masalan	مثلا
A. What, for example?	eeş masalan?	ايش مثلا؟
types	anwaa9	انواع
equipment ('equipments')	ajhiza	اجهزة
B. For example, cars and food and many types of equipment.	masalan sayyaaraat w akl w anwaa9 ajhiza katiir.	مثلا سيارات واكل وانواع اجهزة كثير
goods	biḍaa9a	بضاعة
imported (f)	mistawrida	مستوردة
world	9aalam	عالم
A. I saw goods imported from all the countries of the world.	ana şuft biḍaa9a mistawrida min kull buldaan al-9aalam.	انا شفت بضاعة مستوردة من كل بلدان العالم.
especially	xuşuuşan	خصوصا
B. Especially Europe and Japan.	xuşuuşan urubba w al-yabaan.	خصوصا اوروبا واليابان.

Structure Sentences

1. The Kingdom produces 7 million barrels of oil every day.	al-mamlaka tintij sab9a malyoon barmiil naft kull yoom.	المملكة تنتج سبعة مليون برميل نفط كل يوم.
---	---	---

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| 2. There are many oil companies in Saudi Arabia and in the Arabian Gulf. | fii šarikaat baṭrool
katiir fis-su9uudiyya
wu fil-xaliij al-9arabi. | فيه شركات بطرول
كثير في السعودية
وفي الخليج العربي. |
| 3. The oil embargo happened after the Ramadan War in 1972. | man9 al-baṭrool šaar ba9d
Harb ramaḏaan sanat
itneen wu sab9iin. | منع البطرول صار بعد
حرب رمضان سنة
اثنين وسبعين. |
| 4. Most of the oil wells are in the Eastern Region. | mu9ṣam aabaar az-zeet fil-
manṭiga š-šargiyya. | معظم آبار الزيت
في المنطقة الشرقية. |

Grammatical Notes

1. Three terms are used for 'oil': /naft/ is the classical word and is often used when referring to unrefined oil. /zeet/ is the more colloquial word, and means everything from cooking oil to industrial oil. /baṭrool/ is a newly-borrowed word, and usually refers to petroleum or refined oil.

2. /mu9ṣam/, 'most', 'a majority of', is used with a plural noun in a construct state:

mu9ṣam Haajaatana	most of our needs
mu9ṣam an-naas	The majority of the people
muslimiin.	are Moslems.

Vocabulary Notes

mabni, -iyya, -yiin	built	مبنى - بين
tašdiir	exporting	تصدير
istiiraad	importing	استيراد
Haaja, -aat	need, necessity	حاجة - ات
jihaaz, ajhiza	equipment	جهاز اجهزة
barmiil, baraamiil	barrell	برميل براميل
Harb, Huruub*	war	حرب حروب
biir, aabaar	well	بئر آبار
nuu9, anwaa9	type	نوع انواع
šaddar, yišaddir	export	صدر بصدور
astawrad, yistawrid	import	استورد يستورد
antaj, yintij	produce	انتج ينتج
šaar, yišiiir	happen	صار يصير

*This word is feminine.

Drills

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. We export oil and import most of our needs. | nišaddir al-baṭrool wu
nistawrid mu9ṣam
Haajaatana. | نصدر البطرول
ونستورد معظم
حاجاتنا. |
|--|---|--|

Continue, substituting the following pairs of words:

cars - food
books - international newspapers
food - equipment
coffee - medicine
sugar - airplanes
fabrics - shoes
meat - fruit
oil - most of our needs

2. The Kingdom produces
7 million barrels
of oil every day.

al-mamlaka tintij
sab9a malyoon
barmiil naft kull
yoom.

المملكة تنتج سبعة مليون
برميل نفط كل يوم

Substitute:

the Gulf
America
produces much equipment
airplanes
France
many kinds of goods
buys
Japan
oil from the Middle East
fabrics
produces
cars
the Kingdom
7 million barrels of oil every day

3. Answer the question:

When did you visit the Kingdom? mita zurt al-mamlaka?

متا زرت المملكة؟

after the oil embargo
before the Ramadan War
in 1972
after Ramadan
during Hajj month
after the big Eid
during the winter vacation

4. Most of the oil wells
are in the Eastern
Region.

mu9am aabaar az-zeet fil-
mantiga s-sargiyya.

معظم آبار الزيت
في المنطقة الشرقية

Substitute:

companies
in the Hijaz
people
cities
the Najd
the bedouins
the ministers
the foreigners
the Eastern Region
the oil companies
the oil wells

Situations

1.
 - A. We want to invite you to a meeting next week at the Ministry of Petroleum.
 - B. OK, let me talk to the director.
 - A. Is he back from the Eastern Region?
 - B. He returned last night from visiting ('a visit to') the oil wells there.
2.
 - A. I read an article in a magazine about the oil embargo of ('in the year of') 1972.

- B. Yes, the oil embargo occurred after the war.
A. Which countries in the Middle East export oil?
B. The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia, the Arabian Gulf, Iraq and Iran (/iiraan/) export most of the oil. The economy of the Kingdom is built on oil.
3.
A. Do you (p) like to talk about international politics?
B. Oh, of course. Especially politics and economics of the Middle East.
A. The Middle East has become very important to ('in') the world.
B. Yes, because this area produces oil and because of the political situation as well.

LESSON 49

Dialogue

case	gaḍiyya	قضية
A. I read in the paper about the Palestine matter ('case').	giriit fil-jariida 9an gaḍiyyat falasṭiin.	قرأت في الجريدة عن قضية فلسطين.
problem	muṣkila	مشكلة
problems	maṣaakil	مشاكل
international	duwali	دولي
B. This problem is [one] of the most important international political problems.	haadi l-muṣkila min ahamm al-maṣaakil as-siyaasiyya d-duwaliyya.	هذه المشكلة من أهم المشاكل السياسية الدولية.
A. They say that there may be ('arise') another war between the Arabs and Israel.	yiguulu innu mumkin tiguum Harb taanya been al-9arab w isra'iil.	يقولون انه ممكن تقوم حرب ثانية بين العرب واسرائيل.
at least	9ala l-agall	على الأقل
fedayeen	fidaa'iyiin	فدائيين
they fight	yiHaaribu	يحاربوا
withdraws (f)	tinsaHib	تسحب
lands	araaḍi	أراضي
occupied (f)	muHtalla	محتلة
B. Or at least, the fedayeen will fight until Israel withdraws from the occupied territories.	aw 9ala l-agall, al-fidaa'iyiin Ha-yiHaaribu ileen isra'iil tinsaHib min al-araaḍi l-muHtalla.	أو على الأقل الفدائيين يحاربون الين اسرائيل تسحب من الأراضي المحتلة.
A. Among them [are] the city of Jerusalem and Sinai and the West Bank.	minhum madiinat al-guds wu siina w aḍ-ḍiffa l-gharbiyya.	منهم مدينة القدس وسينا والضفة الغربية.

Structure Sentences

1. The Second World War broke out in 1939..	gaamat al-Harb al-9aalamiyya t-taanya sanat tis9a wu talaatiin.	قامت الحرب العالمية الثانية سنة تسعة وثلاثين.
2. And "the War of the Setback" was in 1967.	wu Harb an-naksa kaanat fi sanat sab9a wu sittiin.	وحرب النكسة كانت في سنة سبعة وستين.
3. Keep that between me and you.	xalli haada beeni wu beenak.	خل هذا بيني وبينك.

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4. At least we solved the problem. | 9ala 1-agall, Halleena
1-muškila. | على الأقل حلينا
المشكلة. |
| 5. Do you (p) want a political solution or a military solution? | tibghu Hall siyaasi walla
Hall 9askari? | تيفغوا حل سياسي
ولا حل عسكري؟ |
| 6. They discussed the Palestine matter in the United Nations. | atkallamu 9an gađiyyat
falaštiin fil-umam
al-muttaHida. | اتكلموا عن قضية فلسطين
في الأمم المتحدة. |
| 7. There are negotiations between the two sides. | fii mufaawađaat been
aṭ-ṭarafeen. | فيه مفاوضات بين الطرفين. |

Grammatical Notes

1. To express 'one of the most' with an adjective, use /min/ with the comparative adjective:

min ahamm al-mašaakil	one of the most important problems
min akbar ar-rijaal	one of the oldest men

2. The verb /gaam/, 'to stand', is used idiomatically with /Harb/ to mean 'to break out', 'to arise', 'to occur'.

3. /been/, 'between', 'among', is sometimes used twice if two sides are mentioned. If pronouns are used, they are suffixed to the word:

beeni wu beenak	between me and you
beeni wu been aHmad	between me and Ahmad
been al-9arab wu isra'iil	between the Arabs and Israel
been al-9arab wu been isra'iil	between the Arabs and Israel

Vocabulary Notes

gađiyya, gađaaya	case, matter	قضية قضاي
muškila, mašaakil	problem	مشكلة مشاكل
arđ, araađi*	land, territory	ارض اراضي
điffa, đifaaf	bank (of a river)	ضفة ضفاف
umma, umam	nation	امة امم
fidaa'i, -iyya, -yiin	freedom fighter, commando	فدائي -يين
ṭaraf, aṭraaf	side	طرف اطراف
9askari, -iyya, -yiin	military	عسكري -يين
duwali -iyya	international	دولي
Haarab, yiHaarib	fight	حارب يحارب
ansaHab, yinsaHib	withdraw	انسحب ينسحب

*This word is feminine.

Drills

1. I read in the paper ana giriit fil-jariida انا قرئت في الجريدة
about the Palestine 9an gaḍiyyat falastiin. عن قضية فلسطين
matter.

Substitute:

the Six-Day War ("War of the Setback")
the 1967 War
the negotiations between the Arabs and Israel
the occupied lands
the West Bank
the solution to ('of') the problem
World War II
the United Nations
the official policy

2. This problem is [one] haadi l-muškila min ahamm هادي المشكلة من اهم
of the most im- al-maṣaakil. المشاكل
portant problems.

Substitute:

one of the biggest problems
one of the smallest problems
this matter
one of the most important matters
these negotiations
[some] of the longest meetings
[some] of the nicest meetings
[some] of the most important meetings
[some] of the most important problems
this problem

3. They say that there yiguulu innu mumkin يقولوا انه ممكن تقوم حرب
may be a war. tiguum Harb.

Substitute:

the negotiations may begin
the United Nations may have ('make') a meeting
the king may change the policy
the commandos may fight
Israel may withdraw from the occupied territories
the government may close the airport
the princes may travel to the Eastern Region
the director may ask for a translation
he may send the letter registered
a war may break out

4. The fedayeen will al-fidaa'iyiin Ha-yiHaaribu الفدائيين حاربوا
fight until Israel ileen isra'ii tinsaHib الين اسرائيل
withdraws from the min al-araaḍi l-muHtalla. تنسحب من الاراضي المحتلة
occupied territories.

Substitute:

until next year
will come to the meetings
will try
until they find a political solution
until they return to Jerusalem

will fight
until they take the West Bank
until Israel withdraws from the occupied territories

5. Keep that between me and you. xalli haada beeni wu
beenak.

خل هادا بيني وبينك

Substitute:

between him and her
between our family and yours ('your family')
between my side and your side
between the Palestinians and the Israelis
between the government and the people

Situations

1.
A. Who are the fedayeen?
B. They are Palestinians who are fighting against Israel.
A. Where are they fighting?
B. In many areas--in the West Bank and Jerusalem, in Syria, in Lebanon.
A. The Palestine issue is a big problem.
B. It's a problem for the Middle East and for the whole world ('all the world').
2.
A. Can you do me a favor ('service')?
B. Certainly, what?
A. I need the new 'Time' magazine but I'm in a hurry.
B. I'll buy it for you this afternoon.
A. I heard that there is an article about the fedayeen.
B. Good. I want to read it, too.

Cultural Notes

1. The subject of Israel is sensitive and rarely discussed socially. We have introduced the vocabulary words, but this is not to imply that the subject matter is appropriate for foreigners to use in initiating conversations.

LESSON 50

Review selected dialogues. Practice them using other persons, also changing tenses and changing the number of nouns.

Supplementary Drills

1. Given the following sentences, change the verbs to future tense:

giri l-jariida.
ruHna li \$aaHibna.
akalat al-burtukaana.
aštareet saa9a jadiida.
saafaru wu \$aafu l-jabal.
ana tarjamt al-jawaab.
naqđafna s-sayyaara l-beeđa.
iidi wa9atni.
aHmad sallam 9aleek.
gafalu l-madrasa.
sa'al su'aal.
raddeet 9ala l-mudarris.
daxal wara l-9imaara.
as-si9r ma9guul.
al-ustaaz ma kaan mawjuud.
aštahal sawwaag taksi.

قري الجديدة.
بحثنا لها حينا.
أكلت البورتوكا.
اشتريت ساعة جديدة.
سافروا وشافوا الجبل.
انا ترجمت الجواب.
نظفنا السيارة البيضاء.
ايدني وجمعتني.
احمد سلم عليك.
قفلوا المدرسة.
سال سؤال.
رديت على المدرسين.
دخل وراء العمارة.
السمير معقول.
الاستاذ ما كان موجود.
اشتغل سواق تاكسي.

Repeat the drill, changing the nouns to plural.

2. Given the sentence, repeat it using an active participle instead of a verb:

axuuya raaH al-madrasa.
\$arafat fuluus katiir.
\$aaf an-naxil.
dafa9 al-Hisaab.
simi9na l-kalaam.
\$alabt minnu musaa9ada.
axuuya saag sayyaarati.
wa\$alna l-Hafla badri.
xaraju mit'axxiriin.
mi\$fi ma9aahum.
al-awlaad naamu fi ghurfat an-noom.

اخوي راح المدرسة.
درفت فلوس كثير.
شاف النخل.
دفع الحساب.
سمعنا الكلام.
طلبت منه مساعدة.
اخوي ساق سيارتي.
وصلنا الحفلة بدري.
خرجوا متأخرين.
مشي معاهم.
الأولاد ناموا في غرفة النوم.

3. I have to rent a house. laazim asta'jir beet.

لازم استأجر بيت

Substitute:

buy a new sofa
import the fabric from America
find another refrigerator
see the oil wells some time
solve this problem
visit Jerusalem at Easter
rest all day
leave a tip for the waiter
study about communism and socialism in East Europe
travel to the Arabian Gulf
see my family during the summer vacation
buy medicine at the pharmacy
clean the curtains in the living room
take my daughter to the hospital
greet the guests
invite them to (/9ala/) dinner

4. I read in the paper
about the matter.

giriit fil-jariida 9an
al-gaḍiyya.

قرئت في الجريدة عن
القضية.

Substitute:

World War I
the oil embargo
the Hindu religion
Arab nationalism
the monarchist system
the minister's reception at the airport
the importing and exporting of goods in Arabia
the probability of another war
the new apparatus which the company bought
the meetings at the United Nations
the negotiations between the two sides
the five pillars of ('in') Islam
the occupied territories

5. We didn't go because
we were tired.

ma ruḥna li'ann kunna
ta9baaniin.

ما رحنا لأن كنا تعبانيين.

we forgot
my head hurt
we had gone before [that]
he didn't invite us
we had already bought fruits and vegetables
we didn't need anything
we didn't want to eat again
because of the rain
I wanted to sew
the children had to go to school
we didn't have a vacation this year

Narratives

1. Thank you, I'm honored to be here in your home. Your home is beautiful, here and in the garden. The food is delicious--bless your hands. That's enough--OK, only a little [more]. Thanks be to God. May your table always be thus. The fruit is [so] fresh--from where did you buy it? I was in the souk this morning but I didn't see fruit like this. The prices are so high now, maybe because it's winter and everything is imported from far [away].

2. This is the first time I've gone to a tailor to have a suit made ('make a suit'). He's very good. I asked for a cotton jacket like my old one ('the old one of mine'). Only I want the sleeves narrow--that's a good idea, isn't it? You should ('must') come with me the next time in order to meet the tailor. He also makes shirts and even ties. He's not expensive at all and his shop is near the center of town.

3. I read many international newspapers and magazines because I like to know about international politics, especially the politics of the Middle East. I have been working in Saudi Arabia for about two years, and I traveled to most of the Arab countries in this period. I don't understand the Palestine problem well, but I hope there is a solution soon, if possible. I agree with the government that after four wars in the area, a political solution and not a military [one] is best.

APPENDIX A

Specialized Vocabulary1. Titles of Nobility

His Majesty (the King) 'owner of majesty'	jalaalat al-malik ṣaaHib al-jalaala	جلالة الملك صاحب الجلالة
Her Majesty (the Queen) 'owner of majesty'	jalaalat al-malika ṣaaHibat al-jalaala	جلالة الملكة صاحبة الجلالة
His Royal Highness (the Prince) 'owner of royal highness'	sumuww al-maliki al-amiir ṣaaHib as-sumuww al-maliki	سمو الملكي الامير صاحب السمو الملكي
His Highness (the Prince) (Princess) 'owner of highness'	sumuww al-amiir (amiira) ṣaaHib as-sumuww (ṣaaHiba)	سمو الامير (اميرة) صاحب السمو (صاحبة)
The Crown Prince '[May God] lengthen your life' (said to royalty)	waliyy al-9ahd ṭaal 9umrak (9umrik)	ولي العهد طال عمره (عمره)
'[May God] lengthen his (her) life' (said about royalty)	ṭaal 9umru (9umraha)	طال عمره (عمرها)
His Excellency (the minister, the am- bassador)	sa9aadat (al-waziir, as-safiir)	سماعة (الوزير، السفير)

2. Military

weapon, arms	silaaH, asliHa	سلاح اسلحة
training	tadriib	تدريب
soldier	9askari, 9asaakir	عسكري عسكري
officer	ṣaabiṭ, ṣubbaaṭ	ضابط ضابط
army	al-jeeṣ	الجيش
navy	al-baHariyya	البحرية
air force	silaaH aṭ-ṭayaraan	سلاح الطيران
ship	baaxira, bawaaxir	باخرة باخرة
port	miina, mawaani	ميناء ميناء
Saudi Arabian National Guard	al-Haras al-waṭani as-su9uudi	الحرس الوطني السعودي
The American Mission	al-bi9sa l-amrikiyya	البعثة الامريكية
The Corps of Engineers	silaaH al-muhandisiin	سلاح المهندسين

3. Political

president	ra'iis, ru'asa	رئيس رئيس
Senate	majlis aṣ-ṣuyuuṣ	مجلس الشيوخ
House of Representatives	majlis an-nuwwaab	مجلس النواب
election	intixaabaat	انتخابات
to elect	antaxab, yintixib	انتخب ينتخب
to win	kasab, yiksab	كسب يكسب
to lose	xisir, yixsar	خسر يخسر
candidate	muraṣṣaH, -iin	مرشح -ين
citizen	muwaṭṭin, -iin	مواطن -ين

citizenship	jinsiyya	جنسية
refugee	laaji', -iin	لاجئ - ين
majority	aktariyya	أكثرية
minority	aqalliyya	أقلية

4. Economic and Commercial

economic	iqtisaadi	اقتصادي
commercial	tujaari	تجاري
technology	tiknoloociyya	تكنولوجيا
technical	fanni	فني
industry	aş-şinaa9a	الصناعة
industrial	şinaa9i	صناعي
profit	faida, fawaayid	فايدة، فوايد
loss	xusaara, xasaayir	خسارة، خسائر
capitalism	ra'smaaliyya	رأسمالية
program	barnaamij, baraamij	برنامج، برامج
advisor	mustaşaar, -iin	مستشار - ين
permit	taşriiH, taşaariiH	تصريح، تصريح
work permit	taşriiH 9amal	تصريح عمل
license	ruxşa, ruxaş	رخصة، رخص
driver's license	ruxşat siwaaga	رخصة سواقة
factory	maşna9, maşaani9	مصنع، مصانع
production	intaaaj	إنتاج
consumption	istihlaak	استهلاك
consumer	mustahlik, -iin	مستهلك - ين
progress	taqaddum	تقدم
rich	ghani, aghniya	غني، اغنيا
poor	fagiir, fugara	فقير، فقرا

5. Law

law	qanuun, qawaaniin	قانون، قوانين
lawyer	muHaami, -iin	محامي - ين
court	maHkama, maHaakim	محكمة، محاكم
judge	qaaqi, qaḍaa	قاضي، قضاة
crime	jariima, jaraayim	جريمة، جرائم
criminal	mujrim, -iin	مجرم - ين
jail	sijn	سجن

6. Religion

mosque	jaami9, jawaami9*	جامع، جوامع
church	kaniisa, kanaayis	كنيسة، كنائس
temple	ma9bad, ma9aabid	معبد، معابد
prophet	nabi, anbiya	نبي، انبيا
'our master' (title for prophets)	sayyidna	سيدنا
religious authorities	9ulama	علماء
religious police	muṭawwi9, -iin	مطوع - ين
The Holy Koran	al-qur'aan al-kariim	القرآن الكريم
Holy Mecca ('the venerated')	makka l-mukarrama	مكة المكرمة
Holy Medina ('the lighted')	al-madiina l-munawwara	المدينة المنورة
lesser pilgrimage	al-9umra	العمرة

*This word alternates with /masjid/.

7. Health

disease	maraq, amraaq	مرض امراض
accident	Haadisa, Hawaadis	حادثة حوادث
wound	jurH, jiraaH	جرح جراح
clinic	9iyaada, -aat	عيادة -ات
operation	9amaliyya, -aat	عملية -ات
analysis	taHliil, taHaaliil	تحليل تحاليل
checkup	kašf	كشف
shot	Hugna, Huga	حقنة حقن
nurse	mumarrida, -aat	ممرضة -ات
vaccination	talgiH	تلقيح
blood	damm	دم
liver	kabd	كبد
kidney	kulya, kalaawi	كلية كلاوى
stomach	mi9da	معدة
lung	ri'a, -aat	رئة -ات
diarrhea	ishaal	اسهال
dysentery	dizantaarya	دزنتاريا
fever	Humma	حمى
measles	al-Hašba	الحصبة
mumps	an-nukaaf	النكاف
cancer	saraŋaan	سرطان
tuberculosis	as-sull	السل
cholera	al-kuliraa	الكوليرا

8. Household Words

houseboy	šabi	صبي
maid	xaddaama	خادمة
to cook	tabax, yuŋbux	طبخ
refrigerator	tallaaja	ثلاجة
stove	butagaaz	بوتجاز
oven	furn	فرن
cupboard	dulaab, dawaaliib	دولاب دوليب
dish, dishes	šaHan, šuHuun	سحن سحون
washer	ghassaala	غسالة
dryer	naššaafa	نشافة
electricity	kahraba	كهربا
pan, pans (pots)	gidir, guduur	قدر قدر
platter, tray	šiniyya, šawaani	صينية صواني
knife	sikkiina, sakaakiin	سكين سكاكين
fork	šooka, šuwak	شوكة شوكة
spoon	ma9laga, ma9aalig	معلقة معالق
to wash	ghassal, yighassil	غسل يغسل
to shine	massaH, yimassiH	مسح مسح
to break	kassar, yikassir	كسر يكسر
clean	nađiif, nuđaaf	نظيف نظاف
dirty	wisix, -iin	وسخ -ين
tablecloth, bedspread	mafraš, mafaariš	مفرش مفارش
sheet	milaaya, -aat	ملاية -ات
blanket	baŋaniyya, baŋaatiin	بطانية بطاطين
towel	manšafa, manaašif	منشفة مناشف
soap	šabuun	صابون

APPENDIX B

Social Expressions

In addition to expressions given in the text, there are many other occasions on which speech formulas are used, and some familiar expressions can also be elaborated upon. Most of these are religious in content. All the formulas will be presented in the masculine or plural form.

1. Hello and Goodby

Good evening. (men only)	masaak allaah bil-xeer.	مساك الله بالخير.
-----------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------

Goodby. ('God with you')	allaah ma9aak.	الله معاك.
--------------------------	----------------	------------

2. Speaking of a Future Plan

May our Lord make it easy.	rabbana yisahhil.	ربنا يسهل.
----------------------------	-------------------	------------

Our Lord with you.	rabbana ma9aak.	ربنا معاك.
--------------------	-----------------	------------

God with you.	allaah ma9aak.	الله معاك.
---------------	----------------	------------

With the permission of God.	b-izn illaah.	بإذن الله.
--------------------------------	---------------	------------

3. Giving Thanks

May God keep you for us. (usually said to a superior)	allaah yixalliik lana.	الله يخليك لنا.
---	------------------------	-----------------

[May God] increase your goodness.	kattar xeerak.	كثر خيرك.
--------------------------------------	----------------	-----------

May God preserve you.	allaah yiHfaḩak.	الله يحفظك.
-----------------------	------------------	-------------

4. Blessings

[It is] what God wills.	ma ṣaa' allaah.	ما شاء الله.
-------------------------	-----------------	--------------

May God bless.	tabaarak allaah.	تبارك الله.
----------------	------------------	-------------

The name of God.	ism allaah.	اسم الله.
------------------	-------------	-----------

(At birth) May God keep him.	allaah yixallii.	الله يخليه.
---------------------------------	------------------	-------------

(To the mother) Thank God for [your] safety.	al-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama.	الحمد لله على السلامة.
---	-------------------------------------	------------------------

5. Offering Food

Have some.	atfaḩḩal.	اتفضل.
------------	-----------	--------

(Response) To [your] strength.	bil-9aafiya.	بالمعافاة.
-----------------------------------	--------------	------------

6. When Someone Compliments Your Food
- To [your] happiness and health. bil-hana wu š-šifa. بالهنا والشفاء.
7. After Someone Drinks
- Healthful. hanii'an. منيثا.
- (Response) May God give you happiness. hanaak aḷḷaah. هناك الله.
8. When Seeing Someone Working, or After He Has Completed A Task
- May God give you strength. aḷḷaah ya9ṭiik al-9aafiya. الله يعطيك العافية.
- (Response) May God strengthen you. aḷḷaah yi9aafiik. الله يعافيك.
9. Before Someone Takes a Trip
- Bon voyage. ('With safety, if God wills') bis-salaama in šaa' aḷḷaah. بالسلامة ان شاء الله.
- [May you] go and return with safety. tisaafir wu tirja9 bis-salaama. تسافر وترجع بالسلامة.
- (Response) May God make you safe. aḷḷaah yisallimak. الله يسلّمك.
10. Asking Pardon
- No offense. la mu'axza. لا مؤاخذا.
- (Response) Never mind. ma9aleeš. معليش.
11. When Someone Says "I have news for you" or "Guess what?"
- [Let it be] good, if God wills. xeer, in šaa' aḷḷaah. خير ان شاء الله.
12. When Something is Broken
- [It is] evil [which] was broken. ankasar aš-šarr. انكسر الشر.
13. Before Engaging in a Dangerous Task, or Waking Someone
- In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate. bism ilaah ar-raḥmaan ar-raḥiim. بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم.
14. Expressing Uncertainty
- [only] God knows. ('God is the most-knowing') aḷḷaahu a9lam. الله اعلم.
15. Wedding
- Congratulations ('blessed'). mabruuk. مبروك.
- [We await] the first-born. 9ugbaal al-bakaari. عقبال البكاري.

16. During Ramadan

Ramadan is generous. ramaḍaan kariim. رمضان كريم.

17. When Someone is Going on Pilgrimage

Blessed pilgrimage. Hajj mabruur. حج مبرور.

18. Speaking of Something Bad

May God not permit it. la samaH alḷaah. لا سمح الله.

[May it be] outside and distant. barra wu baḡiid. برا وبعيد.

19. When Facing a Difficult Situation

I take refuge in God. aḡuuzu billaah. أعوذ بالله.

(Response) May God give you aid. alḷaah yikuun b-ḡuunak. الله يكون بمعونتك.

20. Condolences for a Death

May God greaten your reward. ḡaḡḡam alḷaah ajrak. عظم الله اجرک.

(Response) May God compensate you with good. jazaak alḷaah xeer. جزاك الله خير.

[May] the remainder [be added] to your life. al-baagiya fi Hayaatak. الباقية في حياتك.

(Response) And your life. wu fi Hayaatak. وفي حياتك.

21. When Speaking of a Dead Person

(Name), may God have mercy on him. alḷaah yirḤamu. الله يرحمه.

The late (name). al-marḤuum. المرحوم.

APPENDIX C

Gestures

Gestures are used in all societies to register reactions to people and events and to communicate messages silently. The gestures described below are used in the Hijaz region of Saudi Arabia, and represent only the most common ones. They include only those which are different from gestures used by Americans. (You will observe many other gestures identical for both Americans and Arabians.)

Much of this material was based on an article, "Arabic Gestures", by Robert A. Barakat, which appeared in the Journal of Popular Culture, Spring, 1973 (reprinted with permission).

1. Move the head slightly back and raise eyebrows: no.
Move the head back and chin upward: no.
Move the chin slightly back and make a clicking sound with the tongue: no.
Open the right palm toward the other person, moving it from right to left: no.
2. After shaking hands, place the right hand to the heart: greeting with respect or sincerity.
(Among women: place the right hand to the heart after offering food or drink: offering with sincerity.)
3. Kiss forehead, nose, or right hand of person who is being greeted: extreme respect.
4. Place the right hand on the heart, or pat the heart a few times: that's enough, thank you.
5. Hold the right hand out stiff, with palm down, and move it from left to right: never.
6. Hold open palms facing the other person: excellent.
7. Touch outer edge of eyes with fingertips: OK.
8. Hold right hand up and shake it: go away.
9. Touch tip of nose with tip of right forefinger: promise to do something.
10. Hold out right hand with palm down, move up and down slowly: quiet down.
11. Hold right forefinger in front of mouth and blow on it: be quiet.
12. Bite right forefinger which is placed sideways in mouth: shame!
13. Flick right thumbnail on front teeth: I have no money.

APPENDIX D

Saudi Names

The Arab countries follow several systems in arriving at the composition of a person's name. And within one country, different social classes and religious groups may use different systems. In Saudi Arabia, the system is quite traditional and consistent.

Arab names reflect the genealogy on the father's side. Each person has a given name, and his (or her) "middle name" is that of the father. Thus, women have masculine middle names. The person's name may be followed by "ibn" (son) or "bint" (daughter) with the father's name (this is especially common in the eastern Arabian peninsula). Thus, a person's name may be recited as Muhammad ibn Ahmad ibn Mahmoud, or Habiba bint Ahmad.

Each family has its "family" name. This name identifies the large extended family whose members consider themselves tied by bonds of kinship and honor and who see the group as their main source of identification. Family names are often geographical: Al-Halaby (from Aleppo), Al-Makkawi (Meccan), Shami (Syrian); denote an occupation: Haddad (blacksmith), Najjar (carpenter); descriptive: Al-Asmar (dark-complected), Al-Badawi (Bedouin); tribal: Al-Harbi (from the Harb tribe), Al-Qahtani (from the Qahtan tribe); or sound like a personal name because they are the name of a common ancestor: Ibrahim, Hussein.

In the full form of a name, as used for legal purposes, a person may have more than one name in the middle, those of the grandfather, great-grandfather, etc., but these are omitted in daily use. For example, if a man's full name is:

Muhammad	Hasan	Ahmad	Al-Makkawi
(given)	(father)	(grandfather)	(family)

he may be called Muhammad Hasan on one occasion, or Muhammad Hasan Ahmad, as well as Muhammad Al-Makkawi.

To further complicate the picture, some people are given double names as their first name. In this case, the person usually chooses to "go by" one of his names, and the other shows up only in legal situations. A man known as Hussein Ibrahim could be really named Muhammad-Hussein Ibrahim (the name Muhammad is especially common as the first element of a doubled name). Most American employers double-check the names given by employees to be sure that they are complete, and they decide on a consistent naming practice.

In Saudi Arabia, it is common to address someone you have just met by his first name. (Notice that Saudis will often address you as Mr. John, Mr. Bill, etc.) Arabs often find it odd that Americans refer to each other by their last names.

A woman's name does not change after marriage, since she cannot, of course, take her husband's genealogy, which is what it would entail. Names, therefore, may give no clue whatsoever that two people are husband and wife. Socially, she may be referred to as "the wife of", using her husband's first name. For this reason, Saudis frequently refer to foreign women as Mrs. John, Mrs. Bill, etc.

After having children, parents are often referred to as "Abu" (father) and "Umm" (mother) of their eldest son. For example, a man may be called "Abu Hasan", if this is the name of his eldest son (he will be called after his eldest daughter if he has no sons). This is, of course, non-official. If such a name is used throughout a person's lifetime, it may become a family name in

I. For ease in reading, most names are spelled in a modified phonemic system, approximately the way Arabs spell their names in English.

time, referring to this ancestor, and this is sometimes heard as a form of family name. The use of "Umm" is very common for women, and it provides a more proper, less personal way of addressing a lady than by using her own name.

Arabs make frequent use of nicknames as well. The most common type of nickname is formed by repeating a consonant sound in the person's name, using a double syllable. Common nicknames may be Fifi, Susu, Bobo, Mimi, etc. These are most often used for women and small children, but not always. There is another set of "equivalent" nicknames (like William = Bill, Elizabeth = Betty in English), substituting a name with "Abu" plus another name (in this case, this does not describe a father-son relationship), for example: Hasan = Abu Ali, Omar = Abu Siraj.

There is also the use of titles. Common titles are Duktoor (doctor), Ustaaz (professor), Muhandis (engineer). Other titles frequently used are Hajj (for someone who has made the pilgrimage to Mecca), and titles of nobility.

A person's name can also be a clue to certain facts about him. Names may indicate religion, country or area of origin, and often, social status. This explains why persons may introduce themselves with various long combinations of names.

Most Arabic names are not religiously restricted, but some are, and may not be all that obvious. While all Saudis are Moslem, there are some non-Moslem Arabs living in the country. Only a few patterns emerge as guidelines:

(1) If the name sounds Western (George, Michael, Marie), it marks a Christian name.

(2) Moslems use names hyphenated with Abdel-, plus the attributes of God (Abdel-Rahman, Abdel-Karim, etc.).² Other names are in combination with the word Din (religion), or built on the roots H-m-d, H-s-n, and Sh-r-f (Ahmad, Hamid, Hasan, Sharif).

(3) Most names which refer to personal qualities or attributes are shared by all groups, such as Jamil (beautiful), Zaki (intelligent), Karim (generous).

The following lists of names are by no means exhaustive; they are some of the more common names.

2. Christians use this pattern with a few names: Abdel-Massih, Abdel-Malik, Abdel-Shahid.

Common Names

Men

Abdel- Names

Abdallah
Abdel-Aziz
Abdel-Fattah
Abdel-Ghani
Abdel-Hadi
Abdel-Hakim
Abdel-Halim
Abdel-Jabbar
Abdel-Karim
Abdel-Latif
Abdel-Majid
Abdel-Rahman
Abdel-Rauf
Abdu

"Din" Names

Ala-Eddin
Badr-Eddin
Izz-Eddin
Mohie-Eddin
Salah-Eddin
Shams-Eddin
Sharaf-Eddin

H-m-d Names

Ahmad
Hamad
Hamid
Hammady
Hamud
Mahmoud
Muhammad

H-s-n Names

Hasan
Hasanein
Hassuna
Hosny
Hussein
Mohsen

Sh-r-f Names

Ashraf
Sharaf
Sharif

Koranic, Biblical

Ayoub (Job)
Daud (David)
Ibrahim (Abraham)

Isa (Jesus)
Ishaq (Isaac)
Musa (Moses)
Suleiman (Solomon)
Yacoub (Jacob)
Yehya (John)
Younis (Jonah)
Yousef (Joseph)

Other Names

Abbas
Adel
Adnan
Akram
Ali
Amin
Arif
Bakri
Bashir
Basim
Fahd
Fakhri
Faraj
Farid
Farouk
Fawzi
Fayez
Faysal
Fuad
Ghasan
Habib
Hadi
Hani
Hashim
Hatim
Hisham
Husam
Ihab
Isam
Ismail
Jabir
Jafar
Jalal
Jamal
Jamil

Juma
Kamal
Karim
Khalid
Khalil
Labib
Mahir
Majid
Mamduh
Mamoun
Mansour

Mounib
Mounir
Muammar
Mustafa
Muwaffaq
Nabil
Naim
Nasir
Nuri
Omar
Qays
Rafiq
Ramadan
Ramez
Rashid
Rauf
Ridwan
Rizk
Saad
Sadek
Said
Salah
Salih
Salim
Sami
Samir
Saud
Shafik
Shukri
Suhail
Taha
Tahir
Talal
Tariq
Usama
Wahib
Wajih
Yasin
Yasir
Zaki
Zayad
Zayd

Women

Often men's names are used, with /-a/ added to the end. Other names describe personal attributes, or are the names of historical persons.

-a Names

Amina
Aziza
Badia
Bahija
Basma
Farida
Habiba
Hadia
Jalila
Jamila
Karima
Majida
Mounira
Nadira
Nura
Rabia
Samia
Samiha
Samira
Sharifa
Wahiba
Zakiya

Other Names

Abla
Afaf
Ahlam
Aida
Amal
Ayesha
Azza
Dalal
Fatma
Fayruz
Hala
Hana
Hanan
Hawa
Hind
Hosna
Huda
Ibtisam
Inam
Insaf
Khadija
Layla

Lubna
Maha
Mayy
Miryam
Muna
Nadia
Najwa
Nawal
Nuha
Raja
Raqiya
Sabah
Safiya
Sahar
Sakina
Salma
Salwa
Sana
Sara
Suad
Shadiya
Thoraya
Wafa
Zahra
Zaynab

GLOSSARY

Items in this glossary are arranged according to English alphabetical order, with the special symbols included as follows: a, b, d, đ, e, f, g, gh, h, H, i, j, k, l, m, n, q, r, s, š, š, t, ʔ, u, w, x, y, z, ʒ, 9.

Nouns and adjectives are presented in the masculine singular form, and the plural forms are parenthesized. A few nouns are given in the singular or plural form only, if the other is rare. Nouns which are usually used in the collective plural (foods, for example), are listed under this form.

The feminine form is regular, so it is not shown except for adjectives of color. If a noun is usually used with the article /al-/, it will be listed under the noun (for example, /as-suudaan/). Phrases are listed under the first item (for example, /ma9a l-asaf/). Some proper nouns are given, such as the names of countries, but names of cities are not given unless their pronunciation is very different from that of English.

Verbs are given in the 'he' form of the perfect tense, followed by the imperfect tense. If a verb is usually used with a preposition, this is given in parentheses.

ARABIC -ENGLISH

aadaab	literature, humanities
aanisa	Miss
aasif (-iin)	sorry
aasya	Asia
aaxir (-iin)	last; end
abadan	never
abb	father
abriil	April
abyađ (beeđa) (beeđ)	white
ab9ad	further, more distant
adda, yiddi	to give
afriqya	Africa
agall	less
agdam	older
agrab	nearer
agšar	shorter
aghla	more expensive
ahamm	more important
ahl	family, relatives, people

ahlan	welcome; hi
ahlan wu sahan	welcome
aHad	someone
al-aHad	Sunday
aHla	prettier
aHmar (Hamra) (Humur)	red
aHsan	better
ajadd	newer
ajmal	more beautiful
ajnabi (ajaanib)	foreigner
akal, yaakul	to eat
akbar	bigger
akl	food
aktar	more
alf (aalaaf)	thousand
al-Hiin	now
alḷaah	God
alli	which (non-interrogative)
almaani (almaan)	German (language, nationality)
almaanya	Germany
alṭaf	nicer, more pleasant
amaan	safety
amiir (umara)	prince
amiira (-aat)	princess
amma	either; as for
amriika	America
amrikaani (amrikaan)	American
amriiki (-yiin)	American
ams	yesterday
ana	I
ansaHab, yinsaHib (min)	to withdraw
antaj, yintij	to produce

antaḡar, yintaḡir	to wait for
arba9a	four
arba9iin	forty
arba9ṭa9Ṣ	fourteen
arḡ (araaḡi)	land
arsal, yirsil	to send
arxaṣ	cheaper
asbaani (asbaan)	Spaniard, Spanish
asbaanya	Spain
asta'jar, yista'jir	to rent
asta'zan, yista'zin	to take leave; ask permission
astanna, yistanna	to wait for
astaraaH, yistariiH	to rest
astawrad, yistawrid	to import
asta9jal, yista9jil	to hurry
asta9mal, yista9mil	to use
aswad (sooda) (suud)	black
as9ad	happier
aṣfar (ṣafra) (ṣufur)	yellow
aṣghar	smaller
aṣtaghal, yiṣtaghil	to work
aṣtara, yiṣtari	to buy
at'axxar, yit'axxir	to be late, delayed
atfaḡḡal	go ahead; sit down; have some
atgal	heavier
atkallam, yitkallam	to speak
atmarran, yitmarran	to practice
atṣarraḡ, yitṣarrif	to be honored
at9allam, yit9allim	to be educated
at9arraḡ, yit9arrif (9ala)	to be introduced
at9awwad, yit9awwid (9ala)	to become accustomed

aṭwal	longer
aṭyab	better
aw	or
awHaṣ	worse; uglier
awsa9	wider
awwal	first; beginning
al-awwal	firstly
awwal ams	the day before yesterday
awwal-ma (+ verb)	as soon as
axad, yaaxud	to take
axaff	more lightweight
axḍar (xaḍra) (xuḍur)	green
axx (axwaan)	brother
ayy?	which?
ayy	any
azrag (zarga) (zurg)	blue
a9taqad, ya9taqid	to believe
a9ṭa, yi9ṭi	to give
baab (abwaab)	door
al-baagi	the rest, remainder
baarid	cold
baa9, yibii9	to sell
bada', yibda'	to begin
badawi (badu)	Bedouin
badla (bidal)	suit
badri	early
bagar	cattle; beef
baggaal (-iin)	grocer
baglaawa	baklava pastry
baHr (buHuur)	sea
al-baHreen	Bahrein
bakaluryoos	Bachelor's degree

bala	without
balad (bilaad; buldaan)	country
balaH	red dates
balakoona (-aat)	balcony
balyoon (balaayiin)	billion
banafsaji	purple, violet
banṭaloon (-aat)	trousers
banziin	gasoline
bard	cold
bardaan (-iin)	cold
bariid	mail; post office
bariid jawwi	air mail
barmiil (baraamiil)	barrell
barra	outside; abroad
basboor (-ṭaaṭ)	passport
bass	only
baṣal	onions
baṭaaṭis	potatoes
baṭn	stomach, abdomen
baṭrool	petroleum
baṭṭaal (-iin)	bad
baxṣiiṣ	tip
bazaaliya	peas
ba9d	after
ba9d kida	after that
ba9deen	later
ba9ḍ	each other
ba9iid	far, distant
beeḍ	eggs
been	between
beet (buyuut)	house
bidinjaan	eggplant

biduun	without
biqaa9a	goods
biir (aabaar)	(oil) well
bil-Heel	very much, extremely
bil-marra	very much, extremely
bint (banaat)	girl
bissa (bisas)	cat
biq-ṣabt	exactly
bluuzā (-aat)	blouse
b-sur9a	quickly
b-ṣweeṣ	slowly
bukra	tomorrow
bunni	brown
burtukaan	oranges
burtukaani	orange (color)
buudi (-yiin)	Buddhist
buuṣa	inch
daaxili	interior, inner
daayim	eternal
dafa9, yidfa9	to pay
daftar (dafaatir)	notebook
dagiiga (dagaayig)	minute
daHHiin	now
dajaaj	chicken
daras, yidrus	to study
darras, yidarris	to teach
dars (duruus)	lesson
dasta (-aat)	dozen
dawa (adwiya)	medicine
dawwar, yidawwir (9ala)	to look for
daxal, yudxul	to enter
daxxal, yidaxxil	to cause to enter, bring in

daxxan, yidaxxin	to smoke
dayman	always
diblumaasi (-yiin)	diplomatic, diplomat
difaa9	defense
diin (adyaan)	religion
dimišq	Damascus
dimuqraaṭi (-yiin)	democrat, democratic
ad-dimuqraaṭiyya	democracy
diraasa (-aat)	study
diraa9 (-een)	arm
diri, yidri	to be aware
disambar	December
dukkaan (dakaakiin)	shop
duktoor (dakaatra)	doctor
dukturaa	Doctor's degree
dulaab (dawaaliib)	closet, cupboard
dulaar (-aat)	dollar
dunya	world
duub- (+ verb)	just
duwali	international
duxuul	entering
ḡahr	back
ḡariiba (ḡaraayib)	tax
ḡayyig	narrow
ḡeef (ḡuyuuf)	guest
ḡidd	against
ḡiffa (ḡifaaf)	bank (of river)
ḡuhur	noon
eeš	what?
faaḡi (-yiin)	free, empty
faṣuuliyya	beans
faḡḡal, yifaḡḡil	to prefer

fahham, yifahhim	to explain, help to understand
fajr	dawn
fakha (fawaakih)	fruit
fakk, yifukk	to take apart; change money
fakka	change (money)
falaṣtiin	Palestine
fallaaH (-iin)	peasant farmer
faraansa	France
faransaawi (-yiin)	French (language, nationality)
faṣl (fuṣuul)	season, class
fataH, yiftaH	to open
faṭuur	breakfast
feen?	where?
fi	in
fibraayir	February
fidaa'i (-yiin)	freedom fighter, commando
fii	there is, are
fikra (afkaar)	idea
filfil	pepper
fil-miyya	per cent
finjaan (fanaajiin)	cup
foog	up, above, upstairs
fundug (fanaadig)	hotel
furn	oven
furṣa (furaṣ)	opportunity, occasion
fustaan (fasaatiin)	dress
gaabal, yigaabil	to meet
gaal, yiguul	to say
gaam, yiguum	to get up, stand up
gaas, yigiis	to measure
gabl	before; since; ago

gabl kida	before that
gadam (agdaam)	foot (measurement)
gaddees?	how much?
gadiim (gudum)	old
gaḍiyya (gaḍaaya)	case, matter
gafal, yigfil	to close
gahwa	coffee
galam (aglaam)	pen
galiil (-iin)	few
gamiṣ (gumṣaan)	shirt
garaaj	garage
gariib (-iin)	near; soon
garṣ (guruuṣ)	piastre
gaṣiir (guṣaar)	short
gaḡad, yugḡud	to sit
gidir, yigdar	to be able
giid- (+ verb)	already
giri, yigra	to read
gism (agsaam)	department
guddaam	in front of
al-guds	Jerusalem
gumaaṣ (agmiṣa)	fabric
gunṣuliyya (-aat)	consulate
guṭun	cotton
guzaaz	glass
ghaali (-yiin)	expensive
ghada	lunch
ghalaṭ	wrong
ghalṭaan (-iin)	wrong
gharb	west
ghayyar, yighayyir	to change
gheer kida	other than that

ghraam	gram
ghurfa (ghuraf)	room
ghurfat al-intiẓaar	lobby, reception room
ghurfat al-juluus	living room
ghurfat an-noom	bedroom
ghurfat as-sufra	dining room
haada	this (m)
haadi	this (f)
hadaak	that (m)
hadiik	that (f)
hadolaak	those
hadool	these
halala	(unit of money)
handasa	engineering
hina	here
hinaak	there
hinduusi (-yiin)	Hindu
hiyya	she
humma	they
huwwa	he
Haaḍir	very well, OK; ready
Haaja (-aat)	thing; need, necessity
Haal (aHwaal)	situation, condition
Haarab, yiHaarib	to fight, go to war
Haawal, yiHaawil	to try
Habb, yiHubb	to like, love; to want to
Habba	a piece, one
Haḍaana	nursery school, kindergarten
Haḍratak	you (honorific)
Hafla (Hafalaat)	party
Hagg (-oon)	belonging to

Hajj	the pilgrimage to Mecca
Hajz	reservation
Haliib	milk
Hamd	glory
Hammaal (-iin)	porter
Hammaam (-aat)	bathroom
Harb (Huruub)	war
Harr	hot; heat
Harraan (-iin)	hot
Hatta	even; until
Haṭṭ, yiHuṭṭ	to put
Hawaali	about, approximately
Hijaazi (-yiin)	Hijazi
Hijri	A.H. (Islamic calendar)
Hilu (-wiin)	pretty; sweet
Hisaab (-aat)	check, bill, account
Hizaam	belt
Hizb (aHzaab)	party (political)
Hood	sink
Hooṣ	garden
Hukuuma (-aat)	government
ibṣer	gladly, certainly
ibtidaa'i	elementary
iHḍa9ṣ	eleven
iHna	we
iHtimaal	probability
iid (yadeen)	hand
iijaar	rent
iiwa	yes
ijtimaa9 (-aat)	meeting
ijtimaa9i	social

ileen	until
illa	yes; minus
al-imaaraat	the Emirates
imtiHaan (-aat)	examination, test
in 'Saa' aḷḷaah	if God wills
ingiliizi (ingiliiz)	English (language, nationality)
ingiltera	England
innu	that (conjunction)
inta	you (m)
inti	you (f)
intu	you (p)
iqtisaaḍ	economics
islaami	Islamic
ism (asaami)	name
isra'iil	Israel
isra'iili (-yiin)	Israeli
istiiraad	importing
istigbaal (-aat)	reception
iṣṣaara (-aat)	signal, traffic signal
iṣṣtiraaki	socialist
al-iṣṣtiraakiyya	socialism
itna9ṣ	twelve
itneen	two
al-itneen	Monday
ittifaag (-aat)	agreement
iṭṭaali (-yiin)	Italian
iza	if
izn	permission
i9daadi	intermediate
i9laam	information
jaab, yijiib	to bring
jaam9a (-aat)	university

jabal (jibaal)	mountain
jadiid (judud)	new
jadur (judraan)	wall
jakitta (-aat)	jacket
jalas, yijlis	to sit
jamb	beside
jamiil	beautiful
januub	south
jariida (jaraayid)	newspaper
jarraaH (-iin)	surgeon
jarrab, yijarrib	to try out
jawaab (-aat)	letter; answer
jawaaz (-aat) as-safar	passport
jawaazaat	passport control
jaww	weather
jayy (-iin)	coming, next
al-jazaayir	Algeria, Algiers
jazma (jizam)	shoes
jazzaar (-iin)	butcher
jeeš (juyuuš)	army
jiddan	very
jihaaz (ajhiza)	equipment, appliance, apparatus
jii9aan (-iin)	hungry
jild	leather, skin
jineena (janaayin)	garden
jughrafya	geography
jumhuuri	republican
jumhuuriyya	republic
jumla (jumal)	sentence
al-jum9a	Friday
juwwa	inside
kaafir (-iin)	unbeliever

kaan, yikuun	to be
kabaab	shish kabob
kabiir (kubaar)	big
kalaam	speech
kalb (kilaab)	dog
kallaaf, yikallif	to cost
kallam, yikallim	to talk to
kam?	how many?
kamaan	too, also
kammal, yikammil	to finish
kanaba (-aat)	sofa
karafiṭṭa (-aat)	necktie
kart (kuruut)	card
katab, yiktub	to write
katiir	much, many
kazaalik	thus, as well
keef?	how?
kida	like that
kifaaya	enough
kiilu	kilo
kiimya	chemistry
kilma (kalimaat)	word
kitaab (kutub)	book
kitaaba	writing
kubbaaya (-aat)	drinking glass
kubri (kabaari)	bridge
kufta	ground spiced meat
kull	each, every
kull-ma (+ verb)	whenever
kulliyya (-aat)	college
kumm (akmaam)	sleeve

kursi (karaasi)	chair
kuusa	squash
al-kuweet	Kuwait
kwayyis (-iin)	good
la'	no
laa (+ verb)	do not (negative command)
laakin	but
laazim (+ verb)	must
laff, yiluff	to turn
laga, yilaagi	to find
laHam	meat
lamman	when (non-interrogative)
laṭiif (luṭaaf)	nice, pleasant
law	if
law samaHt	if you please
leel	night
leemuun	lemons
leeṣ?	why?
li'ann	because
libnaan	Lebanon
liHadd-ma (+ verb)	until
liibya	Libya
lillaah	to God
li muddat	for a period of
lissa9	still; not yet
lista (lisat)	list
litir	liter
lugha (-aat)	language
ma (+ verb)	not
ma fii	there is not, are not
maaḍi	last, past

maali	financial
maaris	March
maaşa (-aat)	desk
maayu	May
mabni (-yiin)	built
mabruuk (-iin)	blessed; "congratulations"
mabsuuṭ (-iin)	happy
madiina (mudun)	city
madrasa (madaaris)	school
madxal (madaaxil)	entrance
mafhuum (-iin)	understood
maftuuH (-iin)	opened
magaas (-aat)	size
magfuul (-iin)	closed
maghrib	sunset
al-maghrib	Morocco
maHad	nobody
maHall (-aat)	place, store
maHaṭṭa (-aat)	station, stop
maHbuub (-iin)	beloved
maHduud (-iin)	limited, fixed
maHši	stuffed
majalla (-aat)	magazine
majisteer	Master's degree
majlis (majaalis)	majlis session
makaan (amaakin)	place
maktab (makaatib)	office
maktaba (-aat)	library, bookstore
maktuub (-iin)	written
malik (muluuk)	king
malika (-aat)	queen

maliki	monarchist, monarchistic
malikiyya	monarchy
malla, yimalli	to fill, fill out
malyoon (malaayiin)	million
mamlaka (-aat)	kingdom
mamnuu9 (-iin)	forbidden
manṭiga (manaṭig)	region, area
manzil (manaazil)	house
man9	embargo, prevention
maqaala (-aat)	article (magazine, newspaper)
marHaba	welcome
marra	very; occasion; some time
masa	p.m., evening
masaa'	evening
masalan	for example
masiiHi (-yiin)	Christian
masjid (masaajid)	mosque
mas'uul (-iin)	responsible; official (person)
maṣur	Egypt
maṣghuul (-iin)	busy
maṣkuur (-iin)	thanked
maṣruu9 (maṣaarii9)	project
maṣwi	grilled
maṭaar (-aat)	airport
maṭar	rain
maṭbax	kitchen
maṭ9am (maṭaa9im)	restaurant
mawgif (mawaagif)	stop, stand (bus, taxi)
mawlid an-nabi	the Prophet's Birthday
mawjuud (-iin)	present, found
mawluud (-iin)	born
maw9ad (mawaa9iid)	appointment

maxtuub (-iin)	engaged (to be married)
maḡbuuṭ (-iin)	correct, precise
ma9a	with
ma9a kida	in spite of that, nevertheless
ma9a l-asaf	unfortunately
ma9aleeṣ	never mind, it doesn't matter
ma9dan (ma9aadin)	metal
ma9guul (-iin)	believable, reasonable
ma9had (ma9aahid)	institute
ma9muul (-iin)	done
ma9ruuf (-iin)	known, well-known
ma9rifa	acquaintance
miHtaaḡ (-iin)	needing, in need of
miilaadi	A.D. (Christian calendar)
miin?	who?
milH	salt
min	from; ago
min faḡlak	please
min gheer	without
minHa (minaH)	scholarship, grant
mintaqir (-iin)	waiting
mistanni (-yiin)	waiting
mista9jil (-iin)	in a hurry
miṣi, yimṣi	to walk; leave
mita?	when?
mit'akkid (-iin)	sure, certain
mit'assif (-iin)	sorry
mit'axxir (-iin)	late, delayed
mitir (amṭaar)	meter
mitzawwij (-iin)	married
mit9allim (-iin)	educated
miyya (-aat)	hundred

mooz	bananas
moyya	water
mubii9aat	sales
mudarris (-iin)	teacher
mudda	period of time
mudiir (-iin)	director, boss
mudiir maktab	appointments secretary
mufaawaḡaat	negotiations
mugaabil	facing
muhandis (-iin)	engineer
muḡimm (-iin)	important
muḡtall	occupied
mumkin	possible
mumtaaz (-iin)	excellent
musajjil (-aat)	recorder
musaa9ada	help, aid
musaa9id	assistant
musajjal	registered
muslim (-iin)	Moslem
mustaḡfa (-yaat)	hospital
musta9mal (-iin)	used
muḡkila (maḡaakil)	problem
muḡrif (-iin)	supervisor; inspector
muḡtarawaat	purchases
mutarjim (-iin)	translator, interpreter
muttaḡid	united
muu	not
muu kida?	Isn't that so?
muwaafig (-iin)	in agreement
muwaḡalaat	transportation, communication
muwaḡḡaf (-iin)	employee
mu9tadil	moderate

mu9am	majority
naam, yinaam	to sleep
naas	people
naayib (nuwwaab)	deputy, representative
naqqaf, yinaqqif	to clean
naqiif (nuqaaf)	clean
nafs	same; oneself
naft	oil
nahaar	daytime
nahr (anhaar)	river
najdi (-yiin)	Najdi
najjaar (-iin)	carpenter
naksa	setback
naxil	palmtrees
nazal, yinzal	to descend, stay
nazzal, yinazzal	to cause to descend, take down
na9am?	pardon?
na9am	yes
nimra (nimar)	number
nisi, yinsa	to forget
ni9aam (nu9um)	system
noom	sleep
nufambar	November
nu99	half
nuur	light
nuu9 (anwaa9)	type, kind
al-qaahira	Cairo
qa9ar	Qatar
qawmi	national, nationalistic
al-qawmiyya	nationalism
raabi9	fourth
raadyu (rawaadi)	radio

raaH, yiruuH	to go
raas	head
rabbana	our Lord
rabii9	spring (season)
ar-rabuu9	Wednesday
radd, yirudd (9ala)	to answer
ragam (argaam)	number
rajja9, yirajji9	to return (something)
raml	sand
rasmi	official
raṭl (arṭaal)	pound (measurement)
raxiiṣ (ruxaaṣ)	cheap
riji9, yirja9	to return
rijjaal (rijaal)	man
rijl (rujuul)	foot
risaala (rasaayil)	message, letter
riyaaqa	mathematics
riyaal (-aat)	riyal
rub9	quarter, one fourth
rukṇ (arkaan)	pillar
rumaadi	gray
ruusi (ruus)	Russian (language, nationality)
ruusya	Russia
ruzz	rice
sa'al, yis'al	to ask
saab, yisiib	to leave behind
saabi9	seventh
saadis	sixth
saafar, yisaafir	to travel
saag (-een)	leg
saag, yisuug	to drive
saakin (-iin)	living, residing

saanawi	secondary; yearly
saaniya (sawaani)	second (unit of time)
saa9a (-aat).	hour; watch
saa9ad, yisaa9id (fi)	to help
sa'al, yis'al	to ask
as-sabt	Saturday
saba9ta9%	seventeen
sab9a	seven
sab9iin	seventy
safaara (-aat)	embassy
safiir (sufara)	ambassador
sahl	easy
salaam	peace
salaama	safety
saliig	rice cooked with milk and meat
sallam, yisallim (9ala)	to greet; make safe
samaH, yismaH	to permit
samak (asmaak)	fish
sana (siniin, sanawaat)	year
sariir (surur)	bed
sawa	together
sawwa, yisawwi	to make, do
sawwaag (-iin)	driver
sayyaara (-aat)	car
sayyid	Mr.
sayyida	Mrs.
sa9iid (su9adaa')	happy
sibtambar	September
sideeri	vest
siib (asyaab)	hall, hallway
siina	Sinai
sikirteer (-iin)	secretary

simi9, yisma9	to hear
sitaara (sataayir)	curtain, drape
sitt (-aat)	woman, lady
sitta	six
sittiin	sixty
siṭṭa9ḥ	sixteen
siyaasa (-aat)	policy
si9r (as9aar)	price
su'aal (as'ila)	question
sujjaada (sajaajiid)	rug, carpet
sukkar	sugar
as-suudaan	Sudan
suug (aswaag)	souk
suuriya	Syria
su9uudi (-yiin)	Saudi
as-su9uudiyya	Saudi Arabia
ṣaala	entrance area in a home
ṣaam, yiṣuum	to fast
ṣaar, yiṣiir	to happen
ṣabaaH	morning
ṣaddar, yiṣaddir	to export
ṣaghiir (ṣughaar)	small
ṣahyuuni (-yiin)	Zionist
aṣ-ṣahyuuniyya	Zionism
ṣaHH	right, correct
ṣaHiiH	true
ṣaHra (ṣaHaari)	desert
ṣalaa	prayer
ṣalla, yiṣalli	to pray
ṣalaṭa	salad
ṣaloon	guests' receiving room

şanduug (şanaadiig)	box, trunk
şanti	centimeter
şaraf, yişruf	to spend
şarraaf (-iin)	moneychanger
şayaađiyya	dish of fish, onions, and rice
şaydala	pharmacy (subject)
şaydaliyya	pharmacy (store)
şa9b	difficult
şeef	summer
şifir	zero
şiHHa	health
şinaa9a	industry
şoom	fasting
şubuH	a.m., morning
şufra	table of food
şufraji (-yiin)	waiter
şuuf	wool
şaaHib (aşHaab)	friend
şaaaf, yişuuf	to see
şaahi	tea
şaal, yişiiil	to carry
şaari9 (şawaari9)	street
şaađi' (şawaađi')	coast
şagga (şugag)	apartment
şahar (şuhuur)	month
şajara (aşjaar)	tree
şakar, yuşkur	to thank
şamaal	north
şams	sun
şanđa (şunađ)	suitcase, purse, briefcase
şarg	east
şarika (-aat)	company

aš-šarq al-awsaṭ	the Middle East
šarraf, yišarrif	to honor
šayy (ašyaa')	thing
šayyal, yišayyil	to load, cause to carry
šeex (šuyuux)	sheikh
šihaada (-aat)	declaration of faith; certificate
šimaal	left
širib, yišrab	to drink
šita	winter
šloonak?	How are you?
šubbaak (šabaabiik)	window
šughul (ašghaal)	work
šukr	thanks
šukran	thank you
šurb	drinking
šuyuu9i (-yiin)	communist
aš-šuyuu9iyya	communism
šwayya	a little bit
taajir (tujjaar)	merchant
taalit	third
taamin	eighth
taani (-yiin)	second; another, other
taani (+ verb)	again
taariix	history
taasi9	ninth
tagiil (tugaal)	heavy
tagriiban	approximately
taḥat	under, below, downstairs
taksi (-yaat)	taxi
takyiif	air conditioning
talaata	three

talaatiin	thirty
talaṭa9ǵ	thirteen
talj	ice, snow
tallaaǵa (-aat)	refrigerator
at-taluut	Tuesday
tamaniin	eighty
tamanṭa9ǵ	eighteen
tamanya	eight
tamriin (tamaariin)	drill
tamur	dried dates
tarbiya	education, upbringing
tarjama	translation
tarjam, yitarjim	to translate
taṣdiir	exporting
taṣmiim (-aat)	design
ta'ǵiira (-aat)	visa
taww- (+ verb)	just
tazkira (tazaakir)	ticket
ta9aal (irregular)	come!
ta9b	trouble, bother
ta9baan (-iin)	tired
ta9liim	education
ta99ab, yita99ib	to trouble, tire
tijaara	commerce
tilifizyoon (-aat)	television
tilifoon (-aat)	telephone
tisa9ṭa9ǵ	nineteen
tis9a	nine
tis9iin	ninety
tuffaaH	apples
tult	one third

turki (atraak)	Turk
tuunis	Tunisia, Tunis
ṭaaba9 (ṭawaabi9)	stamp
ṭaalib (ṭalaba, ṭullaab)	student
ṭaaza	fresh
ṭabbaax (-iin)	cook
ṭab9an	of course
ṭaḥiina	sesame dip
ṭalab (-aat)	order, request
ṭalab, yuṭlub	to ask for, request, order
ṭalla9, yiṭalli9	to carry up, out
ṭamaaṭim	tomatoes
ṭarabiiza (-aat)	table
ṭarablus	Tripoli
ṭaraf (aṭraaf)	side
ṭard (ṭuruud)	package
ṭariig (ṭurug)	way, road
ṭawiil (ṭuwaal)	tall
ṭayaraan	airlines
ṭayyaara (-aat)	airplane
ṭayyib (-iin)	good, OK
ṭibb	medicine (subject)
ṭili9, yiṭla9	to go up, ascend
ṭi9im	delicious
ṭuul	length
ughuṣṭus	August
uktuubar	October
umma (umam)	nation
umm	mother
al-urdun	Jordan
urubba	Europe

usbuu9 (asaabii9)	week
ustaaz (asaatiza)	professor
utubiis (-aat)	bus
uula (irregular)	first (f)
uxt (axwaat)	sister
waafag, yiwaafig (9ala)	to agree
waaHa (-aat)	oasis
waaHid	one
waajib (-aat)	duty
waalid	father
waalida	mother
waasi9 (-iin)	wide
wagf (awgaaf)	wagf (religious endowment)
waggaf, yiwaggif	to stop, make stop
wagt (awgaat)	time
waHaş	to miss
waja9, yuja9	to hurt
wala	or else
walad (awlaad)	boy, child
walla	or
waŕlah	by God (oath)
wara	behind
warag	paper
warda (wuruud)	flower
warra, yiwarri	to show
waşal, yiwşal	to arrive
wasat	middle, center
waşşal, yiwaşşil	to deliver, take to a destination
waţani	national, patriotic
waziir (wuzara)	minister

wazn (awzaan)	weight
wigif, yiwgaf	to stand, stop
wiHiš (-iin)	bad
wilaaya (-aat)	state (of the U.S.A.)
wizaara (-aat)	ministry
wuguuf	stopping, standing
wujuud	existence, presence
wuṣṭ	waist
xaariji	external, foreign
xaṭṭir	sake
xabbaaz (-iin)	baker
xaddaam (-iin)	servant
xafiif (xufaaf)	lightweight
xalaṣ	finished
xaliij	gulf
xalla, yixalli	to let, leave, allow
xallaṣ, yixallīs	to finish
xamaṣṭa9š	fifteen
al-xamiis	Thursday
xamsa	five
xamsiin	fifty
xaraj, yuxruj	to go out
xarbaan (-iin)	out of order
xariif	autumn
xarraḡ, yixarriḡ	to expel
xaruuf (xirfaan)	lamb
xass	lettuce
xaṭṭ (xuṭuut)	line
xayyaat (-iin)	tailor
xayyaṭ, yixayyiṭ	to sew
xeer	goodness

xidma (xadamaat)	service, favor
xilaal	during
xiyaar	cucumbers
xubz	bread
xuḍaar	vegetables
xuruuj	exit
xuṣuuṣan	especially
xuṭṭa (xuṭaṭ)	plan
ya hala	welcome
al-yabaan	Japan
yabaani (-yiin)	Japanese
yahuudi (-yiin, yahuud)	Jew
yaḷḷa	let's go
al-yaman	Yemen
yamaani (-yiin)	Yemeni
yamiin	right (direction)
yanaayir	January
yarda (-aat)	yard (measurement)
ya9ni	that means, that is to say
yibgha	to want
yimkin	maybe
yoom (ayyaam)	day
al-yoom	today
yuulya	July
yuunya	June
zaakar, yizaakir	to study
zaar, yizuur	to visit
zaayid	plus
zakaa	alms
zamaan	long ago
zawj	wife
zayy	like, similar to

zayy kida	like that
zeen	good
zeet	oil
ziraa9a	agriculture
ziraa9i	agricultural
ziyaada	more, extra
ẓann, yiẓunn	to think
ẓarf (ẓuruuf)	envelope
9aad, yi9iid	to repeat
9aadatan	usually
9aadi (-yiin)	ordinary
9aafiya	strength
9aalam	world
9aalami	international
9aam	year
9aamir	filled
9aašir	tenth
9aašima (9awaāsim)	capital (city)
9aayīš (-iin)	living, alive
9adas	lentils
9add, yi9idd	to count
9adda, yi9addi	to cross
9adl	justice
9afš	luggage
9afwan	you're welcome; pardon me
9ajab, yi9jib	to please
9ala (9a)	on
9ala Hisaab	at the expense of
9ala keefak	you wish
9ala l-agall	at least
9ala mahl-	carefully

9ala tuul	straight ahead
9amal, yi9mil	to do, work
9amal	work
9ammaal (+ verb)	in the process of
9an	about, regarding
9arabi (9arab)	Arab
9arabi	Arabic
9arq	width
9arraaf, yi9arrif (9ala)	to introduce, inform
9asa	it is hoped, possibly
9askari	military
9askari (9asaakir)	soldier
9asa	dinner
9aṣaan	because, in order to
9aṣiir	juice
9aṣur	late afternoon
9aṣara	ten
9aṭṣaan (-iin)	thirsty
9azam, yi9zim	to invite
9eela (9awaayil)	family
9een (9uyuun)	eye
9ibaara 9an	composed of
9iid (a9yaad)	holiday
9iid al-giyaama	Easter
9iid al-istiqlaal	Independence Day
9iid al-miilaad	Christmas
9iid miilaad	birthday
9iid aṣ-ṣukr	Thanksgiving
9ilm (9uluum)	science
9imaara (-aat)	building
9inab	grapes
9ind	to have; at the home of

9inwaan (9anaawiin)	address
al-9iraag	Iraq
9irif, yi9rif	to know
9iṣa	evening prayer
9iṣriin	twenty
9uluum siyaasiyya	political science
9umaan	Oman
9umr	life
9uṭla (9uṭal)	vacation